



Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9

Security hardening

Enhancing security of Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 systems

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 Security hardening

Enhancing security of Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 systems

Legal Notice

Copyright © 2025 Red Hat, Inc.

The text of and illustrations in this document are licensed by Red Hat under a Creative Commons Attribution–Share Alike 3.0 Unported license ("CC-BY-SA"). An explanation of CC-BY-SA is available at

<http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/>

. In accordance with CC-BY-SA, if you distribute this document or an adaptation of it, you must provide the URL for the original version.

Red Hat, as the licensor of this document, waives the right to enforce, and agrees not to assert, Section 4d of CC-BY-SA to the fullest extent permitted by applicable law.

Red Hat, Red Hat Enterprise Linux, the Shadowman logo, the Red Hat logo, JBoss, OpenShift, Fedora, the Infinity logo, and RHCE are trademarks of Red Hat, Inc., registered in the United States and other countries.

Linux[®] is the registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States and other countries.

Java[®] is a registered trademark of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

XFS[®] is a trademark of Silicon Graphics International Corp. or its subsidiaries in the United States and/or other countries.

MySQL[®] is a registered trademark of MySQL AB in the United States, the European Union and other countries.

Node.js[®] is an official trademark of Joyent. Red Hat is not formally related to or endorsed by the official Joyent Node.js open source or commercial project.

The OpenStack[®] Word Mark and OpenStack logo are either registered trademarks/service marks or trademarks/service marks of the OpenStack Foundation, in the United States and other countries and are used with the OpenStack Foundation's permission. We are not affiliated with, endorsed or sponsored by the OpenStack Foundation, or the OpenStack community.

All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Abstract

Learn the processes and practices for securing Red Hat Enterprise Linux servers and workstations against local and remote intrusion, exploitation, and malicious activity. By using these approaches and tools, you can create a more secure computing environment for the data center, workplace, and home.

Table of Contents

PROVIDING FEEDBACK ON RED HAT DOCUMENTATION	6
CHAPTER 1. SECURING RHEL DURING AND RIGHT AFTER INSTALLATION	7
1.1. DISK PARTITIONING	7
1.2. RESTRICTING NETWORK CONNECTIVITY DURING THE INSTALLATION PROCESS	7
1.3. INSTALLING THE MINIMUM AMOUNT OF PACKAGES REQUIRED	8
1.4. POST-INSTALLATION PROCEDURES	8
1.5. DISABLING SMT TO PREVENT CPU SECURITY ISSUES BY USING THE WEB CONSOLE	8
CHAPTER 2. SWITCHING RHEL TO FIPS MODE	10
2.1. FEDERAL INFORMATION PROCESSING STANDARDS 140 AND FIPS MODE	10
RHEL in FIPS mode	10
Switching to FIPS mode after the installation	10
FIPS in crypto-policies	11
2.2. INSTALLING THE SYSTEM WITH FIPS MODE ENABLED	11
2.3. SWITCHING THE SYSTEM TO FIPS MODE	12
2.4. ENABLING FIPS MODE IN A CONTAINER	13
2.5. LIST OF RHEL APPLICATIONS USING CRYPTOGRAPHY THAT IS NOT COMPLIANT WITH FIPS 140-3	14
CHAPTER 3. USING SYSTEM-WIDE CRYPTOGRAPHIC POLICIES	17
3.1. SYSTEM-WIDE CRYPTOGRAPHIC POLICIES	17
3.2. CHANGING THE SYSTEM-WIDE CRYPTOGRAPHIC POLICY	19
3.3. SWITCHING THE SYSTEM-WIDE CRYPTOGRAPHIC POLICY TO MODE COMPATIBLE WITH EARLIER RELEASES	20
3.4. RE-ENABLING SHA-1	20
3.5. SETTING UP SYSTEM-WIDE CRYPTOGRAPHIC POLICIES IN THE WEB CONSOLE	21
3.6. EXCLUDING AN APPLICATION FROM FOLLOWING SYSTEM-WIDE CRYPTOGRAPHIC POLICIES	23
3.6.1. Examples of opting out of the system-wide cryptographic policies	24
3.7. CUSTOMIZING SYSTEM-WIDE CRYPTOGRAPHIC POLICIES WITH SUBPOLICIES	25
3.8. CREATING AND SETTING A CUSTOM SYSTEM-WIDE CRYPTOGRAPHIC POLICY	26
3.9. ENHANCING SECURITY WITH THE FUTURE CRYPTOGRAPHIC POLICY USING THE CRYPTO_POLICIES RHEL SYSTEM ROLE	27
CHAPTER 4. CONFIGURING APPLICATIONS TO USE CRYPTOGRAPHIC HARDWARE THROUGH PKCS #11	31
4.1. CRYPTOGRAPHIC HARDWARE SUPPORT THROUGH PKCS #11	31
4.2. AUTHENTICATING BY SSH KEYS STORED ON A SMART CARD	31
4.3. CONFIGURING APPLICATIONS FOR AUTHENTICATION WITH CERTIFICATES ON SMART CARDS	33
4.4. USING HSMS PROTECTING PRIVATE KEYS IN APACHE	33
4.5. USING HSMS PROTECTING PRIVATE KEYS IN NGINX	34
4.6. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES	34
CHAPTER 5. CONTROLLING ACCESS TO SMART CARDS BY USING POLKIT	35
5.1. SMART-CARD ACCESS CONTROL THROUGH POLKIT	35
5.2. TROUBLESHOOTING PROBLEMS RELATED TO PC/SC AND POLKIT	35
5.3. DISPLAYING MORE DETAILED INFORMATION ABOUT POLKIT AUTHORIZATION TO PC/SC	37
5.4. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES	38
CHAPTER 6. SCANNING THE SYSTEM FOR CONFIGURATION COMPLIANCE AND VULNERABILITIES	39
6.1. CONFIGURATION COMPLIANCE TOOLS IN RHEL	39
6.2. VULNERABILITY SCANNING	40
6.2.1. Red Hat Security Advisories OVAL feed	40
6.2.2. Scanning the system for vulnerabilities	41

6.2.3. Scanning remote systems for vulnerabilities	42
6.3. CONFIGURATION COMPLIANCE SCANNING	42
6.3.1. Configuration compliance in RHEL	42
6.3.2. Possible results of an OpenSCAP scan	43
6.3.3. Viewing profiles for configuration compliance	44
6.3.4. Assessing configuration compliance with a specific baseline	45
6.4. REMEDIATING THE SYSTEM TO ALIGN WITH A SPECIFIC BASELINE	46
6.5. REMEDIATING THE SYSTEM TO ALIGN WITH A SPECIFIC BASELINE BY USING AN SSG ANSIBLE PLAYBOOK	47
6.6. CREATING A REMEDIATION ANSIBLE PLAYBOOK TO ALIGN THE SYSTEM WITH A SPECIFIC BASELINE	48
6.7. CREATING A REMEDIATION BASH SCRIPT FOR A LATER APPLICATION	50
6.8. SCANNING THE SYSTEM WITH A CUSTOMIZED PROFILE USING SCAP WORKBENCH	50
6.8.1. Using SCAP Workbench to scan and remediate the system	50
6.8.2. Customizing a security profile with SCAP Workbench	52
6.8.3. Additional resources	54
6.9. DEPLOYING SYSTEMS THAT ARE COMPLIANT WITH A SECURITY PROFILE IMMEDIATELY AFTER AN INSTALLATION	54
6.9.1. Profiles not compatible with Server with GUI	54
6.9.2. Deploying baseline-compliant RHEL systems using the graphical installation	55
6.9.3. Deploying baseline-compliant RHEL systems using Kickstart	56
6.10. SCANNING CONTAINER AND CONTAINER IMAGES FOR VULNERABILITIES	57
6.11. ASSESSING SECURITY COMPLIANCE OF A CONTAINER OR A CONTAINER IMAGE WITH A SPECIFIC BASELINE	58
6.12. SCAP SECURITY GUIDE PROFILES SUPPORTED IN RHEL 9	59
6.13. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES	71
CHAPTER 7. ENSURING SYSTEM INTEGRITY WITH KEYLIME	73
7.1. HOW KEYLIME WORKS	73
7.2. DEPLOYING KEYLIME VERIFIER FROM A PACKAGE	75
7.3. DEPLOYING KEYLIME VERIFIER AS A CONTAINER	78
7.4. DEPLOYING KEYLIME REGISTRAR FROM A PACKAGE	80
7.5. DEPLOYING KEYLIME REGISTRAR AS A CONTAINER	83
7.6. DEPLOYING A KEYLIME SERVER BY USING RHEL SYSTEM ROLES	86
7.7. VARIABLES FOR THE KEYLIME_SERVER RHEL SYSTEM ROLE	87
7.8. DEPLOYING KEYLIME TENANT FROM A PACKAGE	88
7.9. DEPLOYING KEYLIME AGENT FROM A PACKAGE	91
7.10. CONFIGURING KEYLIME FOR RUNTIME MONITORING	94
7.11. CONFIGURING KEYLIME FOR MEASURED BOOT ATTESTATION	97
7.12. KEYLIME ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES	99
Verifier configuration	100
Registrar configuration	103
Tenant configuration	104
CA configuration	106
Agent configuration	107
Logging configuration	109
CHAPTER 8. CHECKING INTEGRITY WITH AIDE	112
8.1. INSTALLING AIDE	112
8.2. PERFORMING INTEGRITY CHECKS WITH AIDE	112
8.3. UPDATING AN AIDE DATABASE	113
8.4. FILE-INTEGRITY TOOLS: AIDE AND IMA	114
8.5. CONFIGURING FILE INTEGRITY CHECKS WITH THE AIDE RHEL SYSTEM ROLE	114
8.6. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES	116

CHAPTER 9. ENCRYPTING BLOCK DEVICES USING LUKS	117
9.1. LUKS DISK ENCRYPTION	117
9.2. LUKS VERSIONS IN RHEL	118
9.3. OPTIONS FOR DATA PROTECTION DURING LUKS2 RE-ENCRYPTION	119
9.4. ENCRYPTING EXISTING DATA ON A BLOCK DEVICE USING LUKS2	119
9.5. ENCRYPTING EXISTING DATA ON A BLOCK DEVICE USING LUKS2 WITH A DETACHED HEADER	122
9.6. ENCRYPTING A BLANK BLOCK DEVICE USING LUKS2	124
9.7. CONFIGURING THE LUKS PASSPHRASE IN THE WEB CONSOLE	125
9.8. CHANGING THE LUKS PASSPHRASE IN THE WEB CONSOLE	126
9.9. CREATING A LUKS2 ENCRYPTED VOLUME BY USING THE STORAGE RHEL SYSTEM ROLE	127
CHAPTER 10. CONFIGURING AUTOMATED UNLOCKING OF ENCRYPTED VOLUMES BY USING POLICY-BASED DECRYPTION	130
10.1. NETWORK-BOUND DISK ENCRYPTION	130
10.2. DEPLOYING A TANG SERVER WITH SELINUX IN ENFORCING MODE	132
10.3. ROTATING TANG SERVER KEYS AND UPDATING BINDINGS ON CLIENTS	133
10.4. CONFIGURING AUTOMATED UNLOCKING BY USING A TANG KEY IN THE WEB CONSOLE	135
10.5. BASIC NBDE AND TPM2 ENCRYPTION-CLIENT OPERATIONS	138
10.6. CONFIGURING NBDE CLIENTS FOR AUTOMATED UNLOCKING OF LUKS-ENCRYPTED VOLUMES	139
10.7. CONFIGURING NBDE CLIENTS WITH STATIC IP CONFIGURATION	141
10.8. CONFIGURING MANUAL ENROLLMENT OF LUKS-ENCRYPTED VOLUMES BY USING A TPM 2.0 POLICY	142
10.9. CONFIGURING UNLOCKING OF LUKS-ENCRYPTED VOLUMES BY USING A PKCS #11 PIN	144
10.10. REMOVING A CLEVIS PIN FROM A LUKS-ENCRYPTED VOLUME MANUALLY	146
10.11. CONFIGURING AUTOMATED ENROLLMENT OF LUKS-ENCRYPTED VOLUMES BY USING KICKSTART	147
10.12. CONFIGURING AUTOMATED UNLOCKING OF A LUKS-ENCRYPTED REMOVABLE STORAGE DEVICE	149
10.13. DEPLOYING HIGH-AVAILABILITY NBDE SYSTEMS	149
High-available NBDE using Shamir's Secret Sharing	150
Example 1: Redundancy with two Tang servers	150
Example 2: Shared secret on a Tang server and a TPM device	150
10.14. DEPLOYMENT OF VIRTUAL MACHINES IN A NBDE NETWORK	151
10.15. BUILDING AUTOMATICALLY-ENROLLABLE VM IMAGES FOR CLOUD ENVIRONMENTS BY USING NBDE	151
10.16. DEPLOYING TANG AS A CONTAINER	152
10.17. CONFIGURING NBDE BY USING RHEL SYSTEM ROLES	153
10.17.1. Using the nbde_server RHEL system role for setting up multiple Tang servers	153
10.17.2. Setting up Clevis clients with DHCP by using the nbde_client RHEL system role	155
10.17.3. Setting up static-IP Clevis clients by using the nbde_client RHEL system role	157
CHAPTER 11. AUDITING THE SYSTEM	159
11.1. LINUX AUDIT	159
11.2. AUDIT SYSTEM ARCHITECTURE	160
11.3. CONFIGURING AUDITD FOR A SECURE ENVIRONMENT	161
11.4. STARTING AND CONTROLLING AUDITD	162
11.5. UNDERSTANDING AUDIT LOG FILES	163
11.6. USING AUDITCTL FOR DEFINING AND EXECUTING AUDIT RULES	167
11.7. DEFINING PERSISTENT AUDIT RULES	168
11.8. PRE-CONFIGURED AUDIT RULES FILES FOR COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS	168
11.9. USING AUGENRULES TO DEFINE PERSISTENT RULES	169
11.10. DISABLING AUGENRULES	170
11.11. SETTING UP AUDIT TO MONITOR SOFTWARE UPDATES	170
11.12. MONITORING USER LOGIN TIMES WITH AUDIT	172

11.13. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES	173
CHAPTER 12. BLOCKING AND ALLOWING APPLICATIONS BY USING FAPOLICYD	174
12.1. INTRODUCTION TO FAPOLICYD	174
12.2. DEPLOYING FAPOLICYD	175
12.3. MARKING FILES AS TRUSTED USING AN ADDITIONAL SOURCE OF TRUST	177
12.4. ADDING CUSTOM ALLOW AND DENY RULES FOR FAPOLICYD	178
12.5. ENABLING FAPOLICYD INTEGRITY CHECKS	181
12.6. TROUBLESHOOTING PROBLEMS RELATED TO FAPOLICYD	181
12.7. PREVENTING USERS FROM EXECUTING UNTRUSTWORTHY CODE BY USING THE FAPOLICYD RHEL SYSTEM ROLE	184
12.8. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES	185
CHAPTER 13. PROTECTING SYSTEMS AGAINST INTRUSIVE USB DEVICES	186
13.1. USBGUARD	186
13.2. INSTALLING USBGUARD	186
13.3. BLOCKING AND AUTHORIZING A USB DEVICE BY USING CLI	187
13.4. PERMANENTLY BLOCKING AND AUTHORIZING A USB DEVICE	188
13.5. CREATING A CUSTOM POLICY FOR USB DEVICES	189
13.6. CREATING A STRUCTURED CUSTOM POLICY FOR USB DEVICES	190
13.7. AUTHORIZING USERS AND GROUPS TO USE THE USBGUARD IPC INTERFACE	192
13.8. LOGGING USBGUARD AUTHORIZATION EVENTS TO THE LINUX AUDIT LOG	193
13.9. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES	193
CHAPTER 14. CONFIGURING A REMOTE LOGGING SOLUTION	194
14.1. THE RSYSLOG LOGGING SERVICE	194
14.2. INSTALLING RSYSLOG DOCUMENTATION	194
14.3. CONFIGURING A SERVER FOR REMOTE LOGGING OVER TCP	195
14.4. CONFIGURING REMOTE LOGGING TO A SERVER OVER TCP	197
14.5. CONFIGURING TLS-ENCRYPTED REMOTE LOGGING	198
14.6. CONFIGURING A SERVER FOR RECEIVING REMOTE LOGGING INFORMATION OVER UDP	202
14.7. CONFIGURING REMOTE LOGGING TO A SERVER OVER UDP	204
14.8. LOAD BALANCING HELPER IN RSYSLOG	206
14.9. CONFIGURING RELIABLE REMOTE LOGGING	206
14.10. SUPPORTED RSYSLOG MODULES	208
14.11. CONFIGURING THE NETCONSOLE SERVICE TO LOG KERNEL MESSAGES TO A REMOTE HOST	208
14.12. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES	209
CHAPTER 15. USING THE LOGGING SYSTEM ROLE	210
15.1. FILTERING LOCAL LOG MESSAGES BY USING THE LOGGING RHEL SYSTEM ROLE	210
15.2. APPLYING A REMOTE LOGGING SOLUTION BY USING THE LOGGING RHEL SYSTEM ROLE	212
15.3. USING THE LOGGING RHEL SYSTEM ROLE WITH TLS	215
15.3.1. Configuring client logging with TLS	215
15.3.2. Configuring server logging with TLS	218
15.4. USING THE LOGGING RHEL SYSTEM ROLES WITH RELP	221
15.4.1. Configuring client logging with RELP	221
15.4.2. Configuring server logging with RELP	223
15.5. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES	225

PROVIDING FEEDBACK ON RED HAT DOCUMENTATION

We appreciate your feedback on our documentation. Let us know how we can improve it.

Submitting feedback through Jira (account required)

1. Log in to the [Jira](#) website.
2. Click **Create** in the top navigation bar
3. Enter a descriptive title in the **Summary** field.
4. Enter your suggestion for improvement in the **Description** field. Include links to the relevant parts of the documentation.
5. Click **Create** at the bottom of the dialogue.

CHAPTER 1. SECURING RHEL DURING AND RIGHT AFTER INSTALLATION

Security begins even before you start the installation of Red Hat Enterprise Linux. Configuring your system securely from the beginning makes it easier to implement additional security settings later.

1.1. DISK PARTITIONING

The recommended practices for disk partitioning differ for installations on bare-metal machines and for virtualized or cloud environments that support adjusting virtual disk hardware and file systems containing already-installed operating systems.

To ensure separation and protection of data on **bare-metal installations**, create separate partitions for the **/boot**, **/**, **/home**, **/tmp**, and **/var/tmp** directories:

/boot

This partition is the first partition that is read by the system during boot up. The boot loader and kernel images that are used to boot your system into RHEL 9 are stored in this partition. This partition should not be encrypted. If this partition is included in **/** and that partition is encrypted or otherwise becomes unavailable then your system is not able to boot.

/home

When user data (**/home**) is stored in **/** instead of in a separate partition, the partition can fill up causing the operating system to become unstable. Also, when upgrading your system to the next version of RHEL 9 it is a lot easier when you can keep your data in the **/home** partition as it is not be overwritten during installation. If the root partition (**/**) becomes corrupt your data could be lost forever. By using a separate partition there is slightly more protection against data loss. You can also target this partition for frequent backups.

/tmp and /var/tmp

Both the **/tmp** and **/var/tmp** directories are used to store data that does not need to be stored for a long period of time. However, if a lot of data floods one of these directories it can consume all of your storage space. If this happens and these directories are stored within **/** then your system could become unstable and crash. For this reason, moving these directories into their own partitions is a good idea.

For **virtual machines or cloud instances**, the separate **/boot**, **/home**, **/tmp**, and **/var/tmp** partitions are optional because you can increase the virtual disk size and the **/** partition if it begins to fill up. Set up monitoring to regularly check the **/** partition usage so that it does not fill up before you increase the virtual disk size accordingly.



NOTE

During the installation process, you have an option to encrypt partitions. You must supply a passphrase. This passphrase serves as a key to unlock the bulk encryption key, which is used to secure the partition's data.

1.2. RESTRICTING NETWORK CONNECTIVITY DURING THE INSTALLATION PROCESS

When installing RHEL 9, the installation medium represents a snapshot of the system at a particular time. Because of this, it may not be up-to-date with the latest security fixes and may be vulnerable to certain issues that were fixed only after the system provided by the installation medium was released.

When installing a potentially vulnerable operating system, always limit exposure only to the closest necessary network zone. The safest choice is the “no network” zone, which means to leave your machine disconnected during the installation process. In some cases, a LAN or intranet connection is sufficient while the Internet connection is the riskiest. To follow the best security practices, choose the closest zone with your repository while installing RHEL 9 from a network.

1.3. INSTALLING THE MINIMUM AMOUNT OF PACKAGES REQUIRED

It is best practice to install only the packages you will use because each piece of software on your computer could possibly contain a vulnerability. If you are installing from the DVD media, take the opportunity to select exactly what packages you want to install during the installation. If you find you need another package, you can always add it to the system later.

1.4. POST-INSTALLATION PROCEDURES

The following steps are the security-related procedures that should be performed immediately after installation of RHEL 9.

- Update your system. Enter the following command as root:

```
# dnf update
```

- Even though the firewall service, **firewalld**, is automatically enabled with the installation of Red Hat Enterprise Linux, it might be explicitly disabled, for example, in the Kickstart configuration. In such a case, re-enable the firewall.

To start **firewalld** enter the following commands as root:

```
# systemctl start firewalld
# systemctl enable firewalld
```

- To enhance security, disable services you do not need. For example, if no printers are installed on your computer, disable the **cups** service by using the following command:

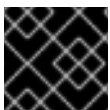
```
# systemctl disable cups
```

To review active services, enter the following command:

```
$ systemctl list-units | grep service
```

1.5. DISABLING SMT TO PREVENT CPU SECURITY ISSUES BY USING THE WEB CONSOLE

Disable Simultaneous Multi Threading (SMT) in case of attacks that misuse CPU SMT. Disabling SMT can mitigate security vulnerabilities, such as L1TF or MDS.



IMPORTANT

Disabling SMT might lower the system performance.

Prerequisites

- You have installed the RHEL 9 web console.

- You have enabled the cockpit service.
- Your user account is allowed to log in to the web console.
For instructions, see [Installing and enabling the web console](#).

Procedure

1. Log in to the RHEL 9 web console.
For details, see [Logging in to the web console](#).
2. In the **Overview** tab find the **System information** field and click **View hardware details**.
3. On the **CPU Security** line, click **Mitigations**.
If this link is not present, it means that your system does not support SMT, and therefore is not vulnerable.
4. In the **CPU Security Toggles** table, turn on the **Disable simultaneous multithreading (nosmt)** option.
5. Click the **Save and reboot** button.

After the system restart, the CPU no longer uses SMT.

Additional resources

- [L1TF - L1 Terminal Fault Attack - CVE-2018-3620 & CVE-2018-3646](#)
- [MDS - Microarchitectural Data Sampling - CVE-2018-12130, CVE-2018-12126, CVE-2018-12127, and CVE-2019-11091](#)

CHAPTER 2. SWITCHING RHEL TO FIPS MODE

To enable the cryptographic module self-checks mandated by the Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) 140-3, you must operate RHEL 9 in FIPS mode. Starting the installation in FIPS mode is the recommended method if you aim for FIPS compliance.

You can see the validation status of cryptographic modules in the [FIPS - Federal Information Processing Standards](#) section on the [Product compliance](#) Red Hat Customer Portal page.

2.1. FEDERAL INFORMATION PROCESSING STANDARDS 140 AND FIPS MODE

The Federal Information Processing Standards (FIPS) Publication 140 is a series of computer security standards developed by the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) to ensure the quality of cryptographic modules. The FIPS 140 standard ensures that cryptographic tools implement their algorithms correctly. Runtime cryptographic algorithm and integrity self-tests are some of the mechanisms to ensure a system uses cryptography that meets the requirements of the standard.

RHEL in FIPS mode

To ensure that your RHEL system generates and uses all cryptographic keys only with FIPS-approved algorithms, you must switch RHEL to FIPS mode.

You can enable FIPS mode by using one of the following methods:

- Starting the installation in FIPS mode
- Switching the system into FIPS mode after the installation

If you aim for FIPS compliance, start the installation in FIPS mode. This avoids cryptographic key material regeneration and reevaluation of the compliance of the resulting system associated with converting already deployed systems.

To operate a FIPS-compliant system, create all cryptographic key material in FIPS mode. Furthermore, the cryptographic key material must never leave the FIPS environment unless it is securely wrapped and never unwrapped in non-FIPS environments.

The [FIPS - Federal Information Processing Standards](#) section on the [Product compliance](#) Red Hat Customer Portal page provides an overview of the validation status of cryptographic modules for selected RHEL minor releases.

Switching to FIPS mode after the installation

Switching the system to FIPS mode by using the **fips-mode-setup** tool does not guarantee compliance with the FIPS 140 standard. Re-generating all cryptographic keys after setting the system to FIPS mode may not be possible. For example, in the case of an existing IdM realm with users' cryptographic keys you cannot re-generate all the keys. If you cannot start the installation in FIPS mode, always enable FIPS mode as the first step after the installation, before you make any post-installation configuration steps or install any workloads.

The **fips-mode-setup** tool also uses the **FIPS** system-wide cryptographic policy internally. But on top of what the **update-crypto-policies --set FIPS** command does, **fips-mode-setup** ensures the installation of the FIPS dracut module by using the **fips-finish-install** tool, it also adds the **fips=1** boot option to the kernel command line and regenerates the initial RAM disk.

Furthermore, enforcement of restrictions required in FIPS mode depends on the content of the **/proc/sys/crypto/fips_enabled** file. If the file contains **1**, RHEL core cryptographic components switch

to mode, in which they use only FIPS-approved implementations of cryptographic algorithms. If `/proc/sys/crypto/fips_enabled` contains `0`, the cryptographic components do not enable their FIPS mode.

FIPS in crypto-policies

The **FIPS** system-wide cryptographic policy helps to configure higher-level restrictions. Therefore, communication protocols supporting cryptographic agility do not announce ciphers that the system refuses when selected. For example, the ChaCha20 algorithm is not FIPS-approved, and the **FIPS** cryptographic policy ensures that TLS servers and clients do not announce the `TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_CHACHA20_POLY1305_SHA256` TLS cipher suite, because any attempt to use such a cipher fails.

If you operate RHEL in FIPS mode and use an application providing its own FIPS-mode-related configuration options, ignore these options and the corresponding application guidance. The system running in FIPS mode and the system-wide cryptographic policies enforce only FIPS-compliant cryptography. For example, the Node.js configuration option `--enable-fips` is ignored if the system runs in FIPS mode. If you use the `--enable-fips` option on a system not running in FIPS mode, you do not meet the FIPS-140 compliance requirements.



WARNING

A RHEL 9.2 and later system running in FIPS mode enforces that any TLS 1.2 connection must use the Extended Master Secret (EMS) extension (RFC 7627) as requires the FIPS 140-3 standard. Thus, legacy clients not supporting EMS or TLS 1.3 cannot connect to RHEL 9 servers running in FIPS mode, RHEL 9 clients in FIPS mode cannot connect to servers that support only TLS 1.2 without EMS. For more information, see the Red Hat Knowledgebase solution [TLS Extension "Extended Master Secret" enforced with Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9.2](#).

Additional resources

- [FIPS - Federal Information Processing Standards](#) section on the [Product compliance](#) Red Hat Customer Portal page
- [RHEL system-wide cryptographic policies](#)
- [FIPS publications at NIST Computer Security Resource Center](#) .
- [Federal Information Processing Standards Publication: FIPS 140-3](#)

2.2. INSTALLING THE SYSTEM WITH FIPS MODE ENABLED

To enable the cryptographic module self-checks mandated by the Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) 140, enable FIPS mode during the system installation.



IMPORTANT

Only enabling FIPS mode during the RHEL installation ensures that the system generates all keys with FIPS-approved algorithms and continuous monitoring tests in place.

**WARNING**

After you complete the setup of FIPS mode, you cannot switch off FIPS mode without putting the system into an inconsistent state. If your scenario requires this change, the only correct way is a complete re-installation of the system.

Procedure

1. Add the **fips=1** option to the kernel command line during the system installation.
2. During the software selection stage, do not install any third-party software.
3. After the installation, the system starts in FIPS mode automatically.

Verification

- After the system starts, check that FIPS mode is enabled:

```
$ fips-mode-setup --check
FIPS mode is enabled.
```

Additional resources

- [Editing boot options](#)

2.3. SWITCHING THE SYSTEM TO FIPS MODE

The system-wide cryptographic policies contain a policy level that enables cryptographic algorithms in accordance with the requirements by the Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) Publication 140. The **fips-mode-setup** tool that enables or disables FIPS mode internally uses the **FIPS** system-wide cryptographic policy.

Switching the system to FIPS mode by using the **FIPS** system-wide cryptographic policy does not guarantee compliance with the FIPS 140 standard. Re-generating all cryptographic keys after setting the system to FIPS mode may not be possible. For example, in the case of an existing IdM realm with users' cryptographic keys you cannot re-generate all the keys.

**IMPORTANT**

Only enabling [FIPS mode during the RHEL installation](#) ensures that the system generates all keys with FIPS-approved algorithms and continuous monitoring tests in place.

The **fips-mode-setup** tool uses the **FIPS** policy internally. But on top of what the **update-crypto-policies** command with the **--set FIPS** option does, **fips-mode-setup** ensures the installation of the FIPS dracut module by using the **fips-finish-install** tool, it also adds the **fips=1** boot option to the kernel command line and regenerates the initial RAM disk.



WARNING

After you complete the setup of FIPS mode, you cannot switch off FIPS mode without putting the system into an inconsistent state. If your scenario requires this change, the only correct way is a complete re-installation of the system.

Procedure

1. To switch the system to FIPS mode:

```
# fips-mode-setup --enable
Kernel initramdisks are being regenerated. This might take some time.
Setting system policy to FIPS
Note: System-wide crypto policies are applied on application start-up.
It is recommended to restart the system for the change of policies
to fully take place.
FIPS mode will be enabled.
Please reboot the system for the setting to take effect.
```

2. Restart your system to allow the kernel to switch to FIPS mode:

```
# reboot
```

Verification

- After the restart, you can check the current state of FIPS mode:

```
# fips-mode-setup --check
FIPS mode is enabled.
```

Additional resources

- **fips-mode-setup(8)** man page on your system
- [FIPS - Federal Information Processing Standards](#) section on the [Product compliance](#) Red Hat Customer Portal page
- [How to enable FIPS on instances using Red Hat Unified Kernel Images](#) (Red Hat Knowledgebase)
- [Security Requirements for Cryptographic Modules](#) on the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) web site.

2.4. ENABLING FIPS MODE IN A CONTAINER

To enable the full set of cryptographic module self-checks mandated by the Federal Information Processing Standard Publication 140-2 (FIPS mode), the host system kernel must be running in FIPS mode. The **podman** utility automatically enables FIPS mode on supported containers.

The **fips-mode-setup** command does not work correctly in containers, and it cannot be used to enable or check FIPS mode in this scenario.

Prerequisites

- The host system must be in FIPS mode.

Procedure

- On systems with FIPS mode enabled, the **podman** utility automatically enables FIPS mode on supported containers.

Additional resources

- [Switching the system to FIPS mode](#) .
- [Installing the system in FIPS mode](#)
- [FIPS - Federal Information Processing Standards](#) section on the [Product compliance](#) Red Hat Customer Portal page

2.5. LIST OF RHEL APPLICATIONS USING CRYPTOGRAPHY THAT IS NOT COMPLIANT WITH FIPS 140-3

To pass all relevant cryptographic certifications, such as FIPS 140-3, use libraries from the core cryptographic components set. These libraries, except from **libgcrypt**, also follow the RHEL system-wide cryptographic policies.

See the [RHEL core cryptographic components](#) Red Hat Knowledgebase article for an overview of the core cryptographic components, the information on how are they selected, how are they integrated into the operating system, how do they support hardware security modules and smart cards, and how do cryptographic certifications apply to them.

List of RHEL 9 applications using cryptography that is not compliant with FIPS 140-3

Bacula

Implements the CRAM-MD5 authentication protocol.

Cyrus SASL

Uses the SCRAM-SHA-1 authentication method.

Dovecot

Uses SCRAM-SHA-1.

Emacs

Uses SCRAM-SHA-1.

FreeRADIUS

Uses MD5 and SHA-1 for authentication protocols.

Ghostscript

Custom cryptography implementation (MD5, RC4, SHA-2, AES) to encrypt and decrypt documents.

GRUB

Supports legacy firmware protocols requiring SHA-1 and includes the **libgcrypt** library.

iPXE

Implements TLS stack.

Kerberos

Preserves support for SHA-1 (interoperability with Windows).

Lasso

The **lasso_wsse_username_token_derive_key()** key derivation function (KDF) uses SHA-1.

MariaDB, MariaDB Connector

The **mysql_native_password** authentication plugin uses SHA-1.

MySQL

mysql_native_password uses SHA-1.

OpenIPMI

The RAKP-HMAC-MD5 authentication method is not approved for FIPS usage and does not work in FIPS mode.

Ovmf (UEFI firmware), Edk2, shim

Full cryptographic stack (an embedded copy of the OpenSSL library).

Perl

Uses HMAC, HMAC-SHA1, HMAC-MD5, SHA-1, SHA-224,....

Pidgin

Implements DES and RC4 ciphers.

PKCS #12 file processing (OpenSSL, GnuTLS, NSS, Firefox, Java)

All uses of PKCS #12 are not FIPS-compliant, because the Key Derivation Function (KDF) used for calculating the whole-file HMAC is not FIPS-approved. As such, PKCS #12 files are considered to be plain text for the purposes of FIPS compliance. For key-transport purposes, wrap PKCS #12 (.p12) files using a FIPS-approved encryption scheme.

Poppler

Can save PDFs with signatures, passwords, and encryption based on non-allowed algorithms if they are present in the original PDF (for example MD5, RC4, and SHA-1).

PostgreSQL

Implements Blowfish, DES, and MD5. A KDF uses SHA-1.

QAT Engine

Mixed hardware and software implementation of cryptographic primitives (RSA, EC, DH, AES,...)

Ruby

Provides insecure MD5 and SHA-1 library functions.

Samba

Preserves support for RC4 and DES (interoperability with Windows).

Syslinux

BIOS passwords use SHA-1.

SWTPM

Explicitly disables FIPS mode in its OpenSSL usage.

Unbound

DNS specification requires that DNSSEC resolvers use a SHA-1-based algorithm in DNSKEY records for validation.

Valgrind

AES, SHA hashes.^[1]

zip

Custom cryptography implementation (insecure PKWARE encryption algorithm) to encrypt and decrypt archives using a password.

Additional resources

- [FIPS - Federal Information Processing Standards](#) section on the [Product compliance](#) Red Hat Customer Portal page
- [RHEL core cryptographic components](#) (Red Hat Knowledgebase)

[1] Re-implements in software hardware-offload operations, such as AES-NI or SHA-1 and SHA-2 on ARM.

CHAPTER 3. USING SYSTEM-WIDE CRYPTOGRAPHIC POLICIES

The system-wide cryptographic policies is a system component that configures the core cryptographic subsystems, covering the TLS, IPsec, SSH, DNSSec, and Kerberos protocols. It provides a small set of policies, which the administrator can select.

3.1. SYSTEM-WIDE CRYPTOGRAPHIC POLICIES

When a system-wide policy is set up, applications in RHEL follow it and refuse to use algorithms and protocols that do not meet the policy, unless you explicitly request the application to do so. That is, the policy applies to the default behavior of applications when running with the system-provided configuration but you can override it if required.

RHEL 9 contains the following predefined policies:

DEFAULT

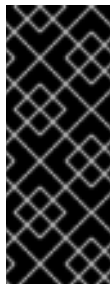
The default system-wide cryptographic policy level offers secure settings for current threat models. It allows the TLS 1.2 and 1.3 protocols, as well as the IKEv2 and SSH2 protocols. The RSA keys and Diffie-Hellman parameters are accepted if they are at least 2048 bits long.

LEGACY

Ensures maximum compatibility with Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 and earlier; it is less secure due to an increased attack surface. SHA-1 is allowed to be used as TLS hash, signature, and algorithm. CBC-mode ciphers are allowed to be used with SSH. Applications using GnuTLS allow certificates signed with SHA-1. It allows the TLS 1.2 and 1.3 protocols, as well as the IKEv2 and SSH2 protocols. The RSA keys and Diffie-Hellman parameters are accepted if they are at least 2048 bits long.

FUTURE

A stricter forward-looking security level intended for testing a possible future policy. This policy does not allow the use of SHA-1 in DNSSec or as an HMAC. SHA2-224 and SHA3-224 hashes are rejected. 128-bit ciphers are disabled. CBC-mode ciphers are disabled except in Kerberos. It allows the TLS 1.2 and 1.3 protocols, as well as the IKEv2 and SSH2 protocols. The RSA keys and Diffie-Hellman parameters are accepted if they are at least 3072 bits long. If your system communicates on the public internet, you might face interoperability problems.



IMPORTANT

Because a cryptographic key used by a certificate on the Customer Portal API does not meet the requirements by the **FUTURE** system-wide cryptographic policy, the **redhat-support-tool** utility does not work with this policy level at the moment.

To work around this problem, use the **DEFAULT** cryptographic policy while connecting to the Customer Portal API.

FIPS

Conforms with the FIPS 140 requirements. The **fips-mode-setup** tool, which switches the RHEL system into FIPS mode, uses this policy internally. Switching to the **FIPS** policy does not guarantee compliance with the FIPS 140 standard. You also must re-generate all cryptographic keys after you set the system to FIPS mode. This is not possible in many scenarios.

RHEL also provides the **FIPS:OSPP** system-wide subpolicy, which contains further restrictions for cryptographic algorithms required by the Common Criteria (CC) certification. The system becomes less interoperable after you set this subpolicy. For example, you cannot use RSA and DH keys

shorter than 3072 bits, additional SSH algorithms, and several TLS groups. Setting **FIPS:OSPP** also prevents connecting to Red Hat Content Delivery Network (CDN) structure. Furthermore, you cannot integrate Active Directory (AD) into the IdM deployments that use **FIPS:OSPP**, communication between RHEL hosts using **FIPS:OSPP** and AD domains might not work, or some AD accounts might not be able to authenticate.



NOTE

Your system is not CC-compliant after you set the **FIPS:OSPP** cryptographic subpolicy. The only correct way to make your RHEL system compliant with the CC standard is by following the guidance provided in the **cc-config** package. See [Common Criteria](#) section on the [Product compliance](#) Red Hat Customer Portal page for a list of certified RHEL versions, validation reports, and links to CC guides.

Red Hat continuously adjusts all policy levels so that all libraries provide secure defaults, except when using the **LEGACY** policy. Even though the **LEGACY** profile does not provide secure defaults, it does not include any algorithms that are easily exploitable. As such, the set of enabled algorithms or acceptable key sizes in any provided policy may change during the lifetime of Red Hat Enterprise Linux.

Such changes reflect new security standards and new security research. If you must ensure interoperability with a specific system for the whole lifetime of Red Hat Enterprise Linux, you should opt-out from the system-wide cryptographic policies for components that interact with that system or re-enable specific algorithms using custom cryptographic policies.

The specific algorithms and ciphers described as allowed in the policy levels are available only if an application supports them:

Table 3.1. Cipher suites and protocols enabled in the cryptographic policies

	LEGACY	DEFAULT	FIPS	FUTURE
IKEv1	no	no	no	no
3DES	no	no	no	no
RC4	no	no	no	no
DH	min. 2048-bit	min. 2048-bit	min. 2048-bit	min. 3072-bit
RSA	min. 2048-bit	min. 2048-bit	min. 2048-bit	min. 3072-bit
DSA	no	no	no	no
TLS v1.1 and older	no	no	no	no
TLS v1.2 and newer	yes	yes	yes	yes
SHA-1 in digital signatures and certificates	yes	no	no	no

	LEGACY	DEFAULT	FIPS	FUTURE
CBC mode ciphers	yes	no ^[a]	no ^[b]	no ^[c]
Symmetric ciphers with keys < 256 bits	yes	yes	yes	no
<p>[a] CBC ciphers are disabled for SSH</p> <p>[b] CBC ciphers are disabled for all protocols except Kerberos</p> <p>[c] CBC ciphers are disabled for all protocols except Kerberos</p>				

Additional resources

- **crypto-policies(7)** and **update-crypto-policies(8)** man pages on your system
- [Product compliance](#) (Red Hat Customer Portal)

3.2. CHANGING THE SYSTEM-WIDE CRYPTOGRAPHIC POLICY

You can change the system-wide cryptographic policy on your system by using the **update-crypto-policies** tool and restarting your system.

Prerequisites

- You have root privileges on the system.

Procedure

1. Optional: Display the current cryptographic policy:

```
$ update-crypto-policies --show
DEFAULT
```

2. Set the new cryptographic policy:

```
# update-crypto-policies --set <POLICY>
<POLICY>
```

Replace **<POLICY>** with the policy or subpolicy you want to set, for example **FUTURE**, **LEGACY** or **FIPS:OSPP**.

3. Restart the system:

```
# reboot
```

Verification

- Display the current cryptographic policy:

```
$ update-crypto-policies --show  
<POLICY>
```

Additional resources

- For more information on system-wide cryptographic policies, see [System-wide cryptographic policies](#)

3.3. SWITCHING THE SYSTEM-WIDE CRYPTOGRAPHIC POLICY TO MODE COMPATIBLE WITH EARLIER RELEASES

The default system-wide cryptographic policy in Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 does not allow communication using older, insecure protocols. For environments that require to be compatible with Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 and in some cases also with earlier releases, the less secure **LEGACY** policy level is available.



WARNING

Switching to the **LEGACY** policy level results in a less secure system and applications.

Procedure

1. To switch the system-wide cryptographic policy to the **LEGACY** level, enter the following command as **root**:

```
# update-crypto-policies --set LEGACY  
Setting system policy to LEGACY
```

Additional resources

- For the list of available cryptographic policy levels, see the **update-crypto-policies(8)** man page on your system.
- For defining custom cryptographic policies, see the **Custom Policies** section in the **update-crypto-policies(8)** man page and the **Crypto Policy Definition Format** section in the **crypto-policies(7)** man page on your system.

3.4. RE-ENABLING SHA-1

The use of the SHA-1 algorithm for creating and verifying signatures is restricted in the **DEFAULT** cryptographic policy. If your scenario requires the use of SHA-1 for verifying existing or third-party cryptographic signatures, you can enable it by applying the **SHA1** subpolicy, which RHEL 9 provides by default. Note that it weakens the security of the system.

Prerequisites

- The system uses the **DEFAULT** system-wide cryptographic policy.

Procedure

1. Apply the **SHA1** subpolicy to the **DEFAULT** cryptographic policy:

```
# update-crypto-policies --set DEFAULT:SHA1
Setting system policy to DEFAULT:SHA1
Note: System-wide crypto policies are applied on application start-up.
It is recommended to restart the system for the change of policies
to fully take place.
```

2. Restart the system:

```
# reboot
```

Verification

- Display the current cryptographic policy:

```
# update-crypto-policies --show
DEFAULT:SHA1
```



IMPORTANT

Switching to the **LEGACY** cryptographic policy by using the **update-crypto-policies --set LEGACY** command also enables SHA-1 for signatures. However, the **LEGACY** cryptographic policy makes your system much more vulnerable by also enabling other weak cryptographic algorithms. Use this workaround only for scenarios that require the enablement of other legacy cryptographic algorithms than SHA-1 signatures.

Additional resources

- [SSH from RHEL 9 to RHEL 6 systems does not work](#) (Red Hat Knowledgebase)
- [Packages signed with SHA-1 cannot be installed or upgraded](#) (Red Hat Knowledgebase)

3.5. SETTING UP SYSTEM-WIDE CRYPTOGRAPHIC POLICIES IN THE WEB CONSOLE

You can set one of system-wide cryptographic policies and subpolicies directly in the RHEL web console interface. Besides the four predefined system-wide cryptographic policies, you can also apply the following combinations of policies and subpolicies through the graphical interface now:

DEFAULT:SHA1

The **DEFAULT** policy with the **SHA-1** algorithm enabled.

LEGACY:AD-SUPPORT

The **LEGACY** policy with less secure settings that improve interoperability for Active Directory services.

FIPS:OSPP

The **FIPS** policy with further restrictions required by the Common Criteria for Information Technology Security Evaluation standard.



WARNING

Because the **FIPS:OSPP** system-wide subpolicy contains further restrictions for cryptographic algorithms required by the Common Criteria (CC) certification, the system is less interoperable after you set it. For example, you cannot use RSA and DH keys shorter than 3072 bits, additional SSH algorithms, and several TLS groups. Setting **FIPS:OSPP** also prevents connecting to Red Hat Content Delivery Network (CDN) structure. Furthermore, you cannot integrate Active Directory (AD) into the IdM deployments that use **FIPS:OSPP**, communication between RHEL hosts using **FIPS:OSPP** and AD domains might not work, or some AD accounts might not be able to authenticate.

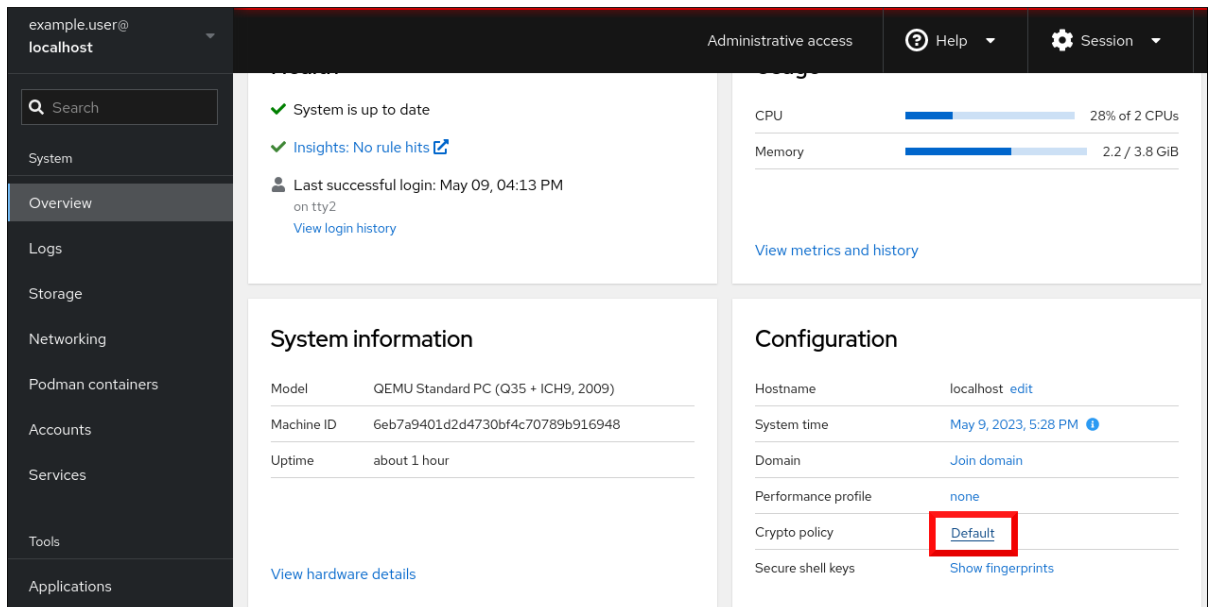
Note that your **system is not CC-compliant** after you set the **FIPS:OSPP** cryptographic subpolicy. The only correct way to make your RHEL system compliant with the CC standard is by following the guidance provided in the **cc-config** package. See the [Common Criteria](#) section on the [Product compliance](#) Red Hat Customer Portal page for a list of certified RHEL versions, validation reports, and links to CC guides hosted at the [National Information Assurance Partnership \(NIAP\)](#) website.

Prerequisites

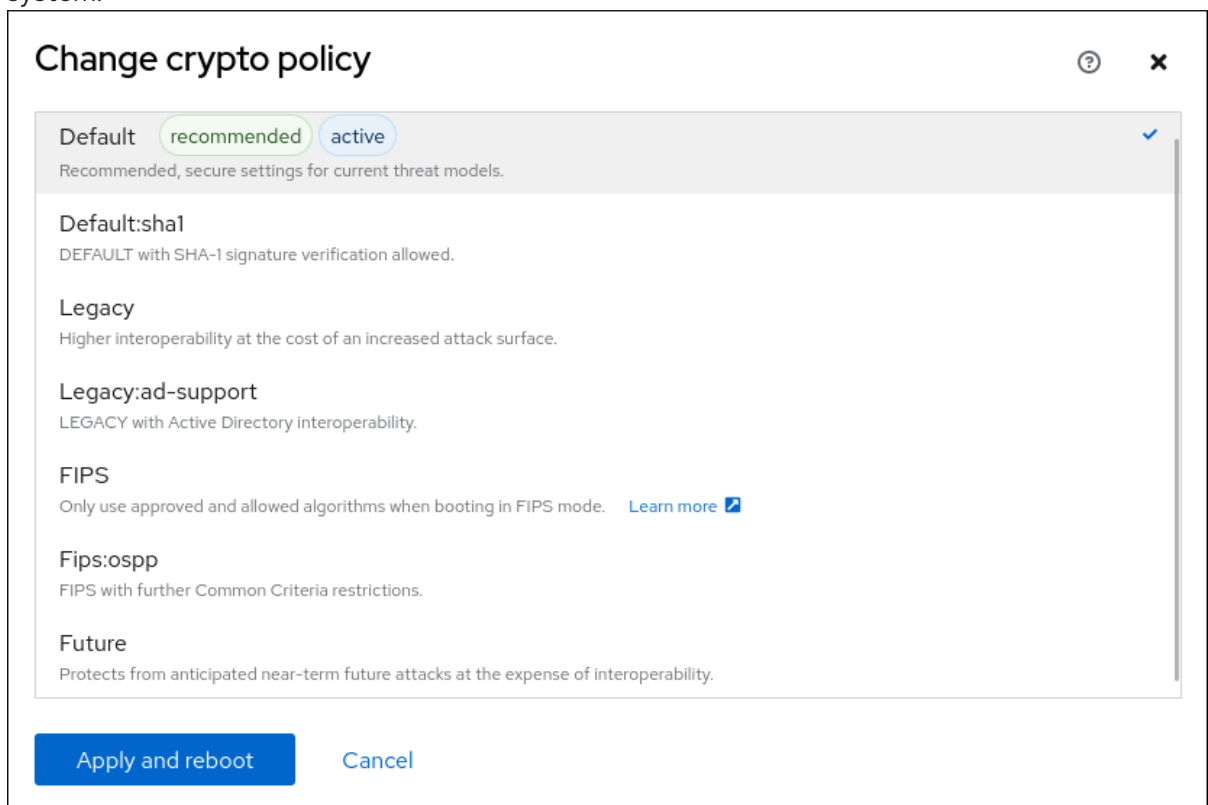
- You have installed the RHEL 9 web console.
- You have enabled the cockpit service.
- Your user account is allowed to log in to the web console.
For instructions, see [Installing and enabling the web console](#).
- You have **root** privileges or permissions to enter administrative commands with **sudo**.

Procedure

1. Log in to the RHEL 9 web console.
For details, see [Logging in to the web console](#).
2. In the **Configuration** card of the **Overview** page, click your current policy value next to **Crypto policy**.



3. In the **Change crypto policy** dialog window, click on the policy you want to start using on your system.



4. Click the **Apply and reboot** button.

Verification

- After the restart, log back in to web console, and check that the **Crypto policy** value corresponds to the one you selected.
Alternatively, you can enter the **update-crypto-policies --show** command to display the current system-wide cryptographic policy in your terminal.

3.6. EXCLUDING AN APPLICATION FROM FOLLOWING SYSTEM-WIDE CRYPTOGRAPHIC POLICIES

You can customize cryptographic settings used by your application preferably by configuring supported cipher suites and protocols directly in the application.

You can also remove a symlink related to your application from the **/etc/crypto-policies/back-ends** directory and replace it with your customized cryptographic settings. This configuration prevents the use of system-wide cryptographic policies for applications that use the excluded back end. Furthermore, this modification is not supported by Red Hat.

3.6.1. Examples of opting out of the system-wide cryptographic policies

wget

To customize cryptographic settings used by the **wget** network downloader, use **--secure-protocol** and **--ciphers** options. For example:

```
$ wget --secure-protocol=TLSv1_1 --ciphers="SECURE128" https://example.com
```

See the HTTPS (SSL/TLS) Options section of the **wget(1)** man page for more information.

curl

To specify ciphers used by the **curl** tool, use the **--ciphers** option and provide a colon-separated list of ciphers as a value. For example:

```
$ curl https://example.com --ciphers '@SECLEVEL=0:DES-CBC3-SHA:RSA-DES-CBC3-SHA'
```

See the **curl(1)** man page for more information.

Firefox

Even though you cannot opt out of system-wide cryptographic policies in the **Firefox** web browser, you can further restrict supported ciphers and TLS versions in Firefox's Configuration Editor. Type **about:config** in the address bar and change the value of the **security.tls.version.min** option as required. Setting **security.tls.version.min** to **1** allows TLS 1.0 as the minimum required, **security.tls.version.min 2** enables TLS 1.1, and so on.

OpenSSH

To opt out of the system-wide cryptographic policies for your OpenSSH server, specify the cryptographic policy in a drop-in configuration file located in the **/etc/ssh/sshd_config.d/** directory, with a two-digit number prefix smaller than 50, so that it lexicographically precedes the **50-redhat.conf** file, and with a **.conf** suffix, for example, **49-crypto-policy-override.conf**.

See the **sshd_config(5)** man page for more information.

To opt out of system-wide cryptographic policies for your OpenSSH client, perform one of the following tasks:

- For a given user, override the global **ssh_config** with a user-specific configuration in the **~/.ssh/config** file.
- For the entire system, specify the cryptographic policy in a drop-in configuration file located in the **/etc/ssh/ssh_config.d/** directory, with a two-digit number prefix smaller than 50, so that it lexicographically precedes the **50-redhat.conf** file, and with a **.conf** suffix, for example, **49-crypto-policy-override.conf**.

See the **ssh_config(5)** man page for more information.

Libreswan

See the [Configuring IPsec connections that opt out of the system-wide crypto policies](#) in the [Securing networks](#) document for detailed information.

Additional resources

- **update-crypto-policies(8)** man page on your system

3.7. CUSTOMIZING SYSTEM-WIDE CRYPTOGRAPHIC POLICIES WITH SUBPOLICIES

Use this procedure to adjust the set of enabled cryptographic algorithms or protocols.

You can either apply custom subpolicies on top of an existing system-wide cryptographic policy or define such a policy from scratch.

The concept of scoped policies allows enabling different sets of algorithms for different back ends. You can limit each configuration directive to specific protocols, libraries, or services.

Furthermore, directives can use asterisks for specifying multiple values using wildcards.

The **/etc/crypto-policies/state/CURRENT.pol** file lists all settings in the currently applied system-wide cryptographic policy after wildcard expansion. To make your cryptographic policy more strict, consider using values listed in the **/usr/share/crypto-policies/policies/FUTURE.pol** file.

You can find example subpolicies in the **/usr/share/crypto-policies/policies/modules/** directory. The subpolicy files in this directory contain also descriptions in lines that are commented out.

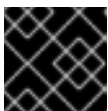
Procedure

1. Checkout to the **/etc/crypto-policies/policies/modules/** directory:

```
# cd /etc/crypto-policies/policies/modules/
```

2. Create subpolicies for your adjustments, for example:

```
# touch MYCRYPTO-1.pmod
# touch SCOPES-AND-WILDCARDS.pmod
```



IMPORTANT

Use upper-case letters in file names of policy modules.

3. Open the policy modules in a text editor of your choice and insert options that modify the system-wide cryptographic policy, for example:

```
# vi MYCRYPTO-1.pmod
```

```
min_rsa_size = 3072
hash = SHA2-384 SHA2-512 SHA3-384 SHA3-512
```

```
# vi SCOPES-AND-WILDCARDS.pmod
```

```
# Disable the AES-128 cipher, all modes
cipher = -AES-128-*

# Disable CHACHA20-POLY1305 for the TLS protocol (OpenSSL, GnuTLS, NSS, and
OpenJDK)
cipher@TLS = -CHACHA20-POLY1305

# Allow using the FFDHE-1024 group with the SSH protocol (libssh and OpenSSH)
group@SSH = FFDHE-1024+

# Disable all CBC mode ciphers for the SSH protocol (libssh and OpenSSH)
cipher@SSH = -*-CBC

# Allow the AES-256-CBC cipher in applications using libssh
cipher@libssh = AES-256-CBC+
```

4. Save the changes in the module files.
5. Apply your policy adjustments to the **DEFAULT** system-wide cryptographic policy level:

```
# update-crypto-policies --set DEFAULT:MYCRYPTO-1:SCOPES-AND-WILDCARDS
```

6. To make your cryptographic settings effective for already running services and applications, restart the system:

```
# reboot
```

Verification

- Check that the `/etc/crypto-policies/state/CURRENT.pol` file contains your changes, for example:

```
$ cat /etc/crypto-policies/state/CURRENT.pol | grep rsa_size
min_rsa_size = 3072
```

Additional resources

- **Custom Policies** section in the **update-crypto-policies(8)** man page on your system
- **Crypto Policy Definition Format** section in the **crypto-policies(7)** man page on your system
- [How to customize crypto policies in RHEL 8.2](#) Red Hat blog article

3.8. CREATING AND SETTING A CUSTOM SYSTEM-WIDE CRYPTOGRAPHIC POLICY

For specific scenarios, you can customize the system-wide cryptographic policy by creating and using a complete policy file.

Procedure

1. Create a policy file for your customizations:

```
# cd /etc/crypto-policies/policies/
# touch MYPOLICY.pol
```

Alternatively, start by copying one of the four predefined policy levels:

```
# cp /usr/share/crypto-policies/policies/DEFAULT.pol /etc/crypto-
policies/policies/MYPOLICY.pol
```

2. Edit the file with your custom cryptographic policy in a text editor of your choice to fit your requirements, for example:

```
# vi /etc/crypto-policies/policies/MYPOLICY.pol
```

3. Switch the system-wide cryptographic policy to your custom level:

```
# update-crypto-policies --set MYPOLICY
```

4. To make your cryptographic settings effective for already running services and applications, restart the system:

```
# reboot
```

Additional resources

- **Custom Policies** section in the **update-crypto-policies(8)** man page and the **Crypto Policy Definition Format** section in the **crypto-policies(7)** man page on your system
- [How to customize crypto policies in RHEL](#) Red Hat blog article

3.9. ENHANCING SECURITY WITH THE **FUTURE** CRYPTOGRAPHIC POLICY USING THE **CRYPTO_POLICIES** RHEL SYSTEM ROLE

You can use the **crypto_policies** RHEL system role to configure the **FUTURE** policy on your managed nodes. This policy helps to achieve for example:

- Future-proofing against emerging threats: anticipates advancements in computational power.
- Enhanced security: stronger encryption standards require longer key lengths and more secure algorithms.
- Compliance with high-security standards: for example in healthcare, telco, and finance the data sensitivity is high, and availability of strong cryptography is critical.

Typically, **FUTURE** is suitable for environments handling highly sensitive data, preparing for future regulations, or adopting long-term security strategies.



WARNING

Legacy systems or software does not have to support the more modern and stricter algorithms and protocols enforced by the **FUTURE** policy. For example, older systems might not support TLS 1.3 or larger key sizes. This could lead to compatibility problems.

Also, using strong algorithms usually increases the computational workload, which could negatively affect your system performance.

Prerequisites

- You have prepared the control node and the managed nodes
- You are logged in to the control node as a user who can run playbooks on the managed nodes.
- The account you use to connect to the managed nodes has **sudo** permissions on them.

Procedure

1. Create a playbook file, for example `~/playbook.yml`, with the following content:

```
---
- name: Configure cryptographic policies
  hosts: managed-node-01.example.com
  tasks:
    - name: Configure the FUTURE cryptographic security policy on the managed node
      ansible.builtin.include_role:
        name: redhat.rhel_system_roles.crypto_policies
      vars:
        - crypto_policies_policy: FUTURE
        - crypto_policies_reboot_ok: true
```

The settings specified in the example playbook include the following:

crypto_policies_policy: *FUTURE*

Configures the required cryptographic policy (**FUTURE**) on the managed node. It can be either the base policy or a base policy with some sub-policies. The specified base policy and sub-policies have to be available on the managed node. The default value is **null**. It means that the configuration is not changed and the **crypto_policies** RHEL system role will only collect the Ansible facts.

crypto_policies_reboot_ok: *true*

Causes the system to reboot after the cryptographic policy change to make sure all of the services and applications will read the new configuration files. The default value is **false**.

For details about all variables used in the playbook, see the `/usr/share/ansible/roles/rhel-system-roles.crypto_policies/README.md` file on the control node.

2. Validate the playbook syntax:


```
$ ansible-playbook --syntax-check ~/playbook.yml
```

Note that this command only validates the syntax and does not protect against a wrong but valid configuration.

3. Run the playbook:

```
$ ansible-playbook ~/playbook.yml
```



WARNING

Because the **FIPS:OSPP** system-wide subpolicy contains further restrictions for cryptographic algorithms required by the Common Criteria (CC) certification, the system is less interoperable after you set it. For example, you cannot use RSA and DH keys shorter than 3072 bits, additional SSH algorithms, and several TLS groups. Setting **FIPS:OSPP** also prevents connecting to Red Hat Content Delivery Network (CDN) structure. Furthermore, you cannot integrate Active Directory (AD) into the IdM deployments that use **FIPS:OSPP**, communication between RHEL hosts using **FIPS:OSPP** and AD domains might not work, or some AD accounts might not be able to authenticate.

Note that your **system is not CC-compliant** after you set the **FIPS:OSPP** cryptographic subpolicy. The only correct way to make your RHEL system compliant with the CC standard is by following the guidance provided in the **cc-config** package. See the [Common Criteria](#) section on the [Product compliance](#) Red Hat Customer Portal page for a list of certified RHEL versions, validation reports, and links to CC guides hosted at the [National Information Assurance Partnership \(NIAP\)](#) website.

Verification

1. On the control node, create another playbook named, for example, **verify_playbook.yml**:

```
---
- name: Verification
  hosts: managed-node-01.example.com
  tasks:
    - name: Verify active cryptographic policy
      ansible.builtin.include_role:
        name: redhat.rhel_system_roles.crypto_policies
    - name: Display the currently active cryptographic policy
      ansible.builtin.debug:
        var: crypto_policies_active
```

The settings specified in the example playbook include the following:

crypto_policies_active

An exported Ansible fact that contains the currently active policy name in the format as accepted by the **crypto_policies_policy** variable.

2. Validate the playbook syntax:

```
$ ansible-playbook --syntax-check ~/verify_playbook.yml
```

3. Run the playbook:

```
$ ansible-playbook ~/verify_playbook.yml
TASK [debug] *****
ok: [host] => {
  "crypto_policies_active": "FUTURE"
}
```

The **crypto_policies_active** variable shows the active policy on the managed node.

Additional resources

- **/usr/share/ansible/roles/rhel-system-roles.crypto_policies/README.md** file
- **/usr/share/doc/rhel-system-roles/crypto_policies/** directory
- **update-crypto-policies(8)** and **crypto-policies(7)** manual pages

CHAPTER 4. CONFIGURING APPLICATIONS TO USE CRYPTOGRAPHIC HARDWARE THROUGH PKCS #11

Separating parts of your secret information about dedicated cryptographic devices, such as smart cards and cryptographic tokens for end-user authentication and hardware security modules (HSM) for server applications, provides an additional layer of security. In RHEL, support for cryptographic hardware through the PKCS #11 API is consistent across different applications, and the isolation of secrets on cryptographic hardware is not a complicated task.

4.1. CRYPTOGRAPHIC HARDWARE SUPPORT THROUGH PKCS #11

Public-Key Cryptography Standard (PKCS) #11 defines an application programming interface (API) to cryptographic devices that hold cryptographic information and perform cryptographic functions.

PKCS #11 introduces the *cryptographic token*, an object that presents each hardware or software device to applications in a unified manner. Therefore, applications view devices such as smart cards, which are typically used by persons, and hardware security modules, which are typically used by computers, as PKCS #11 cryptographic tokens.

A PKCS #11 token can store various object types including a certificate; a data object; and a public, private, or secret key. These objects are uniquely identifiable through the PKCS #11 Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) scheme.

A PKCS #11 URI is a standard way to identify a specific object in a PKCS #11 module according to the object attributes. This enables you to configure all libraries and applications with the same configuration string in the form of a URI.

RHEL provides the OpenSC PKCS #11 driver for smart cards by default. However, hardware tokens and HSMs can have their own PKCS #11 modules that do not have their counterpart in the system. You can register such PKCS #11 modules with the **p11-kit** tool, which acts as a wrapper over the registered smart-card drivers in the system.

To make your own PKCS #11 module work on the system, add a new text file to the **/etc/pkcs11/modules/** directory

You can add your own PKCS #11 module into the system by creating a new text file in the **/etc/pkcs11/modules/** directory. For example, the OpenSC configuration file in **p11-kit** looks as follows:

```
$ cat /usr/share/p11-kit/modules/opensc.module  
module: opensc-pkcs11.so
```

Additional resources

- [The PKCS #11 URI Scheme](#)
- [Controlling access to smart cards](#)

4.2. AUTHENTICATING BY SSH KEYS STORED ON A SMART CARD

You can create and store ECDSA and RSA keys on a smart card and authenticate by the smart card on an OpenSSH client. Smart-card authentication replaces the default password authentication.

Prerequisites

- On the client side, the **opensc** package is installed and the **pcscd** service is running.

Procedure

1. List all keys provided by the OpenSC PKCS #11 module including their PKCS #11 URIs and save the output to the **keys.pub** file:

```
$ ssh-keygen -D pkcs11: > keys.pub
```

2. Transfer the public key to the remote server. Use the **ssh-copy-id** command with the **keys.pub** file created in the previous step:

```
$ ssh-copy-id -f -i keys.pub <username@ssh-server-example.com>
```

3. Connect to *<ssh-server-example.com>* by using the ECDSA key. You can use just a subset of the URI, which uniquely references your key, for example:

```
$ ssh -i "pkcs11:id=%01?module-path=/usr/lib64/pkcs11/opensc-pkcs11.so" <ssh-server-example.com>
Enter PIN for 'SSH key':
[ssh-server-example.com] $
```

Because OpenSSH uses the **p11-kit-proxy** wrapper and the OpenSC PKCS #11 module is registered to the **p11-kit** tool, you can simplify the previous command:

```
$ ssh -i "pkcs11:id=%01" <ssh-server-example.com>
Enter PIN for 'SSH key':
[ssh-server-example.com] $
```

If you skip the **id=** part of a PKCS #11 URI, OpenSSH loads all keys that are available in the proxy module. This can reduce the amount of typing required:

```
$ ssh -i pkcs11: <ssh-server-example.com>
Enter PIN for 'SSH key':
[ssh-server-example.com] $
```

4. Optional: You can use the same URI string in the **~/.ssh/config** file to make the configuration permanent:

```
$ cat ~/.ssh/config
IdentityFile "pkcs11:id=%01?module-path=/usr/lib64/pkcs11/opensc-pkcs11.so"
$ ssh <ssh-server-example.com>
Enter PIN for 'SSH key':
[ssh-server-example.com] $
```

The **ssh** client utility now automatically uses this URI and the key from the smart card.

Additional resources

- **p11-kit(8)**, **opensc.conf(5)**, **pcscd(8)**, **ssh(1)**, and **ssh-keygen(1)** man pages on your system

4.3. CONFIGURING APPLICATIONS FOR AUTHENTICATION WITH CERTIFICATES ON SMART CARDS

Authentication by using smart cards in applications may increase security and simplify automation. You can integrate the Public Key Cryptography Standard (PKCS) #11 URIs into your application by using the following methods:

- The **Firefox** web browser automatically loads the **p11-kit-proxy** PKCS #11 module. This means that every supported smart card in the system is automatically detected. For using TLS client authentication, no additional setup is required and keys and certificates from a smart card are automatically used when a server requests them.
- If your application uses the **GnuTLS** or **NSS** library, it already supports PKCS #11 URIs. Also, applications that rely on the **OpenSSL** library can access cryptographic hardware modules, including smart cards, through the **pkcs11** engine provided by the **openssl-pkcs11** package.
- Applications that require working with private keys on smart cards and that do not use **NSS**, **GnuTLS**, nor **OpenSSL** can use the **p11-kit** API directly to work with cryptographic hardware modules, including smart cards, rather than using the PKCS #11 API of specific PKCS #11 modules.
- With the **wget** network downloader, you can specify PKCS #11 URIs instead of paths to locally stored private keys and certificates. This might simplify creation of scripts for tasks that require safely stored private keys and certificates. For example:

```
$ wget --private-key 'pkcs11:token=softhsm;id=%01;type=private?pin-value=111111' --
certificate 'pkcs11:token=softhsm;id=%01;type=cert' https://example.com/
```

- You can also specify PKCS #11 URI when using the **curl** tool:

```
$ curl --key 'pkcs11:token=softhsm;id=%01;type=private?pin-value=111111' --cert
'pkcs11:token=softhsm;id=%01;type=cert' https://example.com/
```



NOTE

Because a PIN is a security measure that controls access to keys stored on a smart card and the configuration file contains the PIN in the plain-text form, consider additional protection to prevent an attacker from reading the PIN. For example, you can use the **pin-source** attribute and provide a **file:** URI for reading the PIN from a file. See [RFC 7512: PKCS #11 URI Scheme Query Attribute Semantics](#) for more information. Note that using a command path as a value of the **pin-source** attribute is not supported.

Additional resources

- **curl(1)**, **wget(1)**, and **p11-kit(8)** man pages on your system

4.4. USING HSMS PROTECTING PRIVATE KEYS IN APACHE

The **Apache** HTTP server can work with private keys stored on hardware security modules (HSMs), which helps to prevent the keys' disclosure and man-in-the-middle attacks. Note that this usually requires high-performance HSMs for busy servers.

For secure communication in the form of the HTTPS protocol, the **Apache** HTTP server (**httpd**) uses

the OpenSSL library. OpenSSL does not support PKCS #11 natively. To use HSMs, you have to install the **openssl-pkcs11** package, which provides access to PKCS #11 modules through the engine interface. You can use a PKCS #11 URI instead of a regular file name to specify a server key and a certificate in the **/etc/httpd/conf.d/ssl.conf** configuration file, for example:

```
SSLCertificateFile "pkcs11:id=%01;token=softhsm;type=cert"
SSLCertificateKeyFile "pkcs11:id=%01;token=softhsm;type=private?pin-value=111111"
```

Install the **httpd-manual** package to obtain complete documentation for the **Apache** HTTP Server, including TLS configuration. The directives available in the **/etc/httpd/conf.d/ssl.conf** configuration file are described in detail in the **/usr/share/httpd/manual/mod/mod_ssl.html** file.

4.5. USING HSMS PROTECTING PRIVATE KEYS IN NGINX

The **Nginx** HTTP server can work with private keys stored on hardware security modules (HSMs), which helps to prevent the keys' disclosure and man-in-the-middle attacks. Note that this usually requires high-performance HSMs for busy servers.

Because **Nginx** also uses the OpenSSL for cryptographic operations, support for PKCS #11 must go through the **openssl-pkcs11** engine. **Nginx** currently supports only loading private keys from an HSM, and a certificate must be provided separately as a regular file. Modify the **ssl_certificate** and **ssl_certificate_key** options in the **server** section of the **/etc/nginx/nginx.conf** configuration file:

```
ssl_certificate    /path/to/cert.pem
ssl_certificate_key "engine:pkcs11:pkcs11:token=softhsm;id=%01;type=private?pin-value=111111";
```

Note that the **engine:pkcs11:** prefix is needed for the PKCS #11 URI in the **Nginx** configuration file. This is because the other **pkcs11** prefix refers to the engine name.

4.6. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES

- **pkcs11.conf(5)** man page on your system

CHAPTER 5. CONTROLLING ACCESS TO SMART CARDS BY USING POLKIT

To cover possible threats that cannot be prevented by mechanisms built into smart cards, such as PINs, PIN pads, and biometrics, and for more fine-grained control, RHEL uses the **polkit** framework for controlling access control to smart cards.

System administrators can configure **polkit** to fit specific scenarios, such as smart-card access for non-privileged or non-local users or services.

5.1. SMART-CARD ACCESS CONTROL THROUGH POLKIT

The Personal Computer/Smart Card (PC/SC) protocol specifies a standard for integrating smart cards and their readers into computing systems. In RHEL, the **pcsc-lite** package provides middleware to access smart cards that use the PC/SC API. A part of this package, the **pcscd** (PC/SC Smart Card) daemon, ensures that the system can access a smart card using the PC/SC protocol.

Because access-control mechanisms built into smart cards, such as PINs, PIN pads, and biometrics, do not cover all possible threats, RHEL uses the **polkit** framework for more robust access control. The **polkit** authorization manager can grant access to privileged operations. In addition to granting access to disks, you can use **polkit** also to specify policies for securing smart cards. For example, you can define which users can perform which operations with a smart card.

After installing the **pcsc-lite** package and starting the **pcscd** daemon, the system enforces policies defined in the **/usr/share/polkit-1/actions/** directory. The default system-wide policy is in the **/usr/share/polkit-1/actions/org.debian.pcsc-lite.policy** file. Polkit policy files use the XML format and the syntax is described in the **polkit(8)** man page on your system.

The **polkitd** service monitors the **/etc/polkit-1/rules.d/** and **/usr/share/polkit-1/rules.d/** directories for any changes in rule files stored in these directories. The files contain authorization rules in JavaScript format. System administrators can add custom rule files in both directories, and **polkitd** reads them in lexical order based on their file name. If two files have the same names, then the file in **/etc/polkit-1/rules.d/** is read first.

If you need to enable smart-card support when the system security services daemon (SSSD) does not run as **root**, you must install the **sssd-polkit-rules** package. The package provides **polkit** integration with SSSD.

Additional resources

- **polkit(8)**, **polkitd(8)**, and **pcscd(8)** man pages on your system

5.2. TROUBLESHOOTING PROBLEMS RELATED TO PC/SC AND POLKIT

Polkit policies that are automatically enforced after you install the **pcsc-lite** package and start the **pcscd** daemon may ask for authentication in the user's session even if the user does not directly interact with a smart card. In GNOME, you can see the following error message:

Authentication is required to access the PC/SC daemon

Note that the system can install the **pcsc-lite** package as a dependency when you install other packages related to smart cards such as **opensc**.

If your scenario does not require any interaction with smart cards and you want to prevent displaying authorization requests for the PC/SC daemon, you can remove the **pcsc-lite** package. Keeping the minimum of necessary packages is a good security practice anyway.

If you use smart cards, start troubleshooting by checking the rules in the system-provided policy file at **/usr/share/polkit-1/actions/org.debian.pcsc-lite.policy**. You can add your custom rule files to the policy in the **/etc/polkit-1/rules.d/** directory, for example, **03-allow-pcsd.rules**. Note that the rule files use the JavaScript syntax, the policy file is in the XML format.

To understand what authorization requests the system displays, check the Journal log, for example:

```
$ journalctl -b | grep pcsc
...
Process 3087 (user: 1001) is NOT authorized for action: access_pcsc
...
```

The previous log entry means that the user is not authorized to perform an action by the policy. You can solve this denial by adding a corresponding rule to **/etc/polkit-1/rules.d/**.

You can search also for log entries related to the **polkitd** unit, for example:

```
$ journalctl -u polkit
...
polkitd[NNN]: Error compiling script /etc/polkit-1/rules.d/00-debug-pcsd.rules
...
polkitd[NNN]: Operator of unix-session:c2 FAILED to authenticate to gain authorization for action
org.debian.pcsc-lite.access_pcsc for unix-process:4800:14441 [/usr/libexec/gsd-smartcard] (owned
by unix-user:group)
...
```

In the previous output, the first entry means that the rule file contains some syntax error. The second entry means that the user failed to gain the access to **pcscd**.

You can also list all applications that use the PC/SC protocol by a short script. Create an executable file, for example, **pcsc-apps.sh**, and insert the following code:

```
#!/bin/bash

cd /proc

for p in [0-9]*
do
  if grep libpcsclite.so.1.0.0 $p/maps &> /dev/null
  then
    echo -n "process: "
    cat $p/cmdline
    echo " ($p)"
  fi
done
```

Run the script as **root**:

```
# ./pcsc-apps.sh
process: /usr/libexec/gsd-smartcard (3048)
enable-sync --auto-ssl-client-auth --enable-crashpad (4828)
```


...

Additional resources

- **journalctl**, **polkit(8)**, **polkitd(8)**, and **pcscd(8)** man pages.

5.3. DISPLAYING MORE DETAILED INFORMATION ABOUT POLKIT AUTHORIZATION TO PC/SC

In the default configuration, the **polkit** authorization framework sends only limited information to the Journal log. You can extend **polkit** log entries related to the PC/SC protocol by adding new rules.

Prerequisites

- You have installed the **pcsc-lite** package on your system.
- The **pcscd** daemon is running.

Procedure

1. Create a new file in the **/etc/polkit-1/rules.d/** directory:

```
# touch /etc/polkit-1/rules.d/00-test.rules
```

2. Edit the file in an editor of your choice, for example:

```
# vi /etc/polkit-1/rules.d/00-test.rules
```

3. Insert the following lines:

```
polkit.addRule(function(action, subject) {
  if (action.id == "org.debian.pcsc-lite.access_pcsc" ||
      action.id == "org.debian.pcsc-lite.access_card") {
    polkit.log("action=" + action);
    polkit.log("subject=" + subject);
  }
});
```

Save the file, and exit the editor.

4. Restart the **pcscd** and **polkit** services:

```
# systemctl restart pcscd.service pcscd.socket polkit.service
```

Verification

1. Make an authorization request for **pcscd**. For example, open the Firefox web browser or use the **pkcs11-tool -L** command provided by the **opensc** package.
2. Display the extended log entries, for example:

```
# journalctl -u polkit --since "1 hour ago"
```

```
polkitd[1224]: <no filename>:4: action=[Action id='org.debian.pcsc-lite.access_pcsc']
polkitd[1224]: <no filename>:5: subject=[Subject pid=2020481 user=user'
groups=user,wheel,mock,wireshark seat=null session=null local=true active=true]
```

Additional resources

- **polkit(8)** and **polkitd(8)** man pages.

5.4. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES

- [Controlling access to smart cards](#) Red Hat Blog article.

CHAPTER 6. SCANNING THE SYSTEM FOR CONFIGURATION COMPLIANCE AND VULNERABILITIES

A compliance audit is a process of determining whether a given object follows all the rules specified in a compliance policy. The compliance policy is defined by security professionals who specify the required settings, often in the form of a checklist, that a computing environment should use.

Compliance policies can vary substantially across organizations and even across different systems within the same organization. Differences among these policies are based on the purpose of each system and its importance for the organization. Custom software settings and deployment characteristics also raise a need for custom policy checklists.

6.1. CONFIGURATION COMPLIANCE TOOLS IN RHEL

You can perform a fully automated compliance audit in Red Hat Enterprise Linux by using the following configuration compliance tools. These tools are based on the Security Content Automation Protocol (SCAP) standard and are designed for automated tailoring of compliance policies.

SCAP Workbench

The **scap-workbench** graphical utility is designed to perform configuration and vulnerability scans on a single local or remote system. You can also use it to generate security reports based on these scans and evaluations.

OpenSCAP

The **OpenSCAP** library, with the accompanying **oscap** command-line utility, is designed to perform configuration and vulnerability scans on a local system, to validate configuration compliance content, and to generate reports and guides based on these scans and evaluations.



IMPORTANT

You can experience memory-consumption problems while using **OpenSCAP**, which can cause stopping the program prematurely and prevent generating any result files. See the [OpenSCAP memory-consumption problems](#) Knowledgebase article for details.

SCAP Security Guide (SSG)

The **scap-security-guide** package provides collections of security policies for Linux systems. The guidance consists of a catalog of practical hardening advice, linked to government requirements where applicable. The project bridges the gap between generalized policy requirements and specific implementation guidelines.

Script Check Engine (SCE)

With SCE, which is an extension to the SCAP protocol, administrators can write their security content by using a scripting language, such as Bash, Python, and Ruby. The SCE extension is provided in the **openscap-engine-sce** package. The SCE itself is not part of the SCAP standard.

To perform automated compliance audits on multiple systems remotely, you can use the OpenSCAP solution for Red Hat Satellite.

Additional resources

- **oscap(8)**, **scap-workbench(8)**, and **scap-security-guide(8)** man pages on your system

- [Red Hat Security Demos: Creating Customized Security Policy Content to Automate Security Compliance](#)
- [Red Hat Security Demos: Defend Yourself with RHEL Security Technologies](#)
- [Managing security compliance in Red Hat Satellite](#)

6.2. VULNERABILITY SCANNING

6.2.1. Red Hat Security Advisories OVAL feed

Red Hat Enterprise Linux security auditing capabilities are based on the Security Content Automation Protocol (SCAP) standard. SCAP is a multi-purpose framework of specifications that supports automated configuration, vulnerability and patch checking, technical control compliance activities, and security measurement.

SCAP specifications create an ecosystem where the format of security content is well-known and standardized although the implementation of the scanner or policy editor is not mandated. This enables organizations to build their security policy (SCAP content) once, no matter how many security vendors they employ.

The Open Vulnerability Assessment Language (OVAL) is the essential and oldest component of SCAP. Unlike other tools and custom scripts, OVAL describes a required state of resources in a declarative manner. OVAL code is never executed directly but using an OVAL interpreter tool called scanner. The declarative nature of OVAL ensures that the state of the assessed system is not accidentally modified.

Like all other SCAP components, OVAL is based on XML. The SCAP standard defines several document formats. Each of them includes a different kind of information and serves a different purpose.

[Red Hat Product Security](#) helps customers evaluate and manage risk by tracking and investigating all security issues affecting Red Hat customers. It provides timely and concise patches and security advisories on the Red Hat Customer Portal. Red Hat creates and supports OVAL patch definitions, providing machine-readable versions of our security advisories.

Because of differences between platforms, versions, and other factors, Red Hat Product Security qualitative severity ratings of vulnerabilities do not directly align with the Common Vulnerability Scoring System (CVSS) baseline ratings provided by third parties. Therefore, we recommend that you use the RHSA OVAL definitions instead of those provided by third parties.

The [RHSA OVAL definitions](#) are available individually and as a complete package, and are updated within an hour of a new security advisory being made available on the Red Hat Customer Portal.

Each OVAL patch definition maps one-to-one to a Red Hat Security Advisory (RHSA). Because an RHSA can contain fixes for multiple vulnerabilities, each vulnerability is listed separately by its Common Vulnerabilities and Exposures (CVE) name and has a link to its entry in our public bug database.

The RHSA OVAL definitions are designed to check for vulnerable versions of RPM packages installed on a system. It is possible to extend these definitions to include further checks, for example, to find out if the packages are being used in a vulnerable configuration. These definitions are designed to cover software and updates shipped by Red Hat. Additional definitions are required to detect the patch status of third-party software.



NOTE

The [Red Hat Insights for Red Hat Enterprise Linux compliance service](#) helps IT security and compliance administrators to assess, monitor, and report on the security policy compliance of Red Hat Enterprise Linux systems. You can also create and manage your SCAP security policies entirely within the compliance service UI.

Additional resources

- [Red Hat and OVAL compatibility](#)
- [Red Hat and CVE compatibility](#)
- [Notifications and Advisories](#) in the [Product Security Overview](#)
- [Security Data Metrics](#)

6.2.2. Scanning the system for vulnerabilities

The **oscap** command-line utility enables you to scan local systems, validate configuration compliance content, and generate reports and guides based on these scans and evaluations. This utility serves as a front end to the OpenSCAP library and groups its functionalities to modules (sub-commands) based on the type of SCAP content it processes.

Prerequisites

- The **openscap-scanner** and **bzip2** packages are installed.

Procedure

1. Download the latest RHSA OVAL definitions for your system:

```
# wget -O - https://www.redhat.com/security/data/oval/v2/RHEL9/rhel-9.oval.xml.bz2 | bzip2 -  
-decompress > rhel-9.oval.xml
```

2. Scan the system for vulnerabilities and save results to the *vulnerability.html* file:

```
# oscap oval eval --report vulnerability.html rhel-9.oval.xml
```

Verification

- Check the results in a browser of your choice, for example:

```
$ firefox vulnerability.html &
```

Additional resources

- **oscap(8)** man page on your system
- [Red Hat OVAL definitions](#)
- [OpenSCAP memory consumption problems](#)

6.2.3. Scanning remote systems for vulnerabilities

You can check remote systems for vulnerabilities with the OpenSCAP scanner by using the **oscap-ssh** tool over the SSH protocol.

Prerequisites

- The **openscap-utils** and **bzip2** packages are installed on the system you use for scanning.
- The **openscap-scanner** package is installed on the remote systems.
- The SSH server is running on the remote systems.

Procedure

1. Download the latest RHSA OVAL definitions for your system:

```
# wget -O - https://www.redhat.com/security/data/oval/v2/RHEL9/rhel-9.oval.xml.bz2 | bzip2 -  
-decompress > rhel-9.oval.xml
```

2. Scan a remote system for vulnerabilities and save the results to a file:

```
# oscap-ssh <username>@<hostname> <port> oval eval --report <scan-report.html> rhel-  
9.oval.xml
```

Replace:

- **<username>@<hostname>** with the user name and host name of the remote system.
- **<port>** with the port number through which you can access the remote system, for example, **22**.
- **<scan-report.html>** with the file name where **oscap** saves the scan results.

Additional resources

- **oscap-ssh(8)**
- [Red Hat OVAL definitions](#)
- [OpenSCAP memory consumption problems](#)

6.3. CONFIGURATION COMPLIANCE SCANNING

6.3.1. Configuration compliance in RHEL

You can use configuration compliance scanning to conform to a baseline defined by a specific organization. For example, if you work with the US government, you might have to align your systems with the Operating System Protection Profile (OSPP), and if you are a payment processor, you might have to align your systems with the Payment Card Industry Data Security Standard (PCI-DSS). You can also perform configuration compliance scanning to harden your system security.

Red Hat recommends you follow the Security Content Automation Protocol (SCAP) content provided in the SCAP Security Guide package because it is in line with Red Hat best practices for affected components.

The SCAP Security Guide package provides content which conforms to the SCAP 1.2 and SCAP 1.3 standards. The **openscap scanner** utility is compatible with both SCAP 1.2 and SCAP 1.3 content provided in the SCAP Security Guide package.

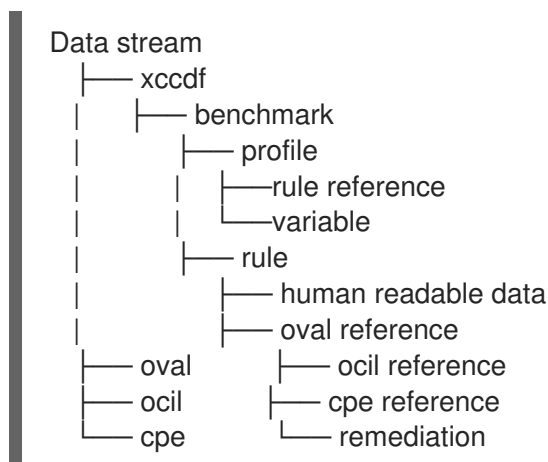


IMPORTANT

Performing a configuration compliance scanning does not guarantee the system is compliant.

The SCAP Security Guide suite provides profiles for several platforms in a form of data stream documents. A data stream is a file that contains definitions, benchmarks, profiles, and individual rules. Each rule specifies the applicability and requirements for compliance. RHEL provides several profiles for compliance with security policies. In addition to the industry standard, Red Hat data streams also contain information for remediation of failed rules.

Structure of compliance scanning resources



A profile is a set of rules based on a security policy, such as OSPP, PCI-DSS, and Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA). This enables you to audit the system in an automated way for compliance with security standards.

You can modify (tailor) a profile to customize certain rules, for example, password length. For more information about profile tailoring, see [Customizing a security profile with SCAP Workbench](#).

6.3.2. Possible results of an OpenSCAP scan

Depending on the data stream and profile applied to an OpenSCAP scan, as well as various properties of your system, each rule may produce a specific result. These are the possible results with brief explanations of their meanings:

Pass

The scan did not find any conflicts with this rule.

Fail

The scan found a conflict with this rule.

Not checked

OpenSCAP does not perform an automatic evaluation of this rule. Check whether your system conforms to this rule manually.

Not applicable

This rule does not apply to the current configuration.

Not selected

This rule is not part of the profile. OpenSCAP does not evaluate this rule and does not display these rules in the results.

Error

The scan encountered an error. For additional information, you can enter the **oscap** command with the **--verbose DEVEL** option. File a support case on the [Red Hat customer portal](#) or open a ticket in the [RHEL project in Red Hat Jira](#).

Unknown

The scan encountered an unexpected situation. For additional information, you can enter the **oscap** command with the **--verbose DEVEL** option. File a support case on the [Red Hat customer portal](#) or open a ticket in the [RHEL project in Red Hat Jira](#).

6.3.3. Viewing profiles for configuration compliance

Before you decide to use profiles for scanning or remediation, you can list them and check their detailed descriptions using the **oscap info** subcommand.

Prerequisites

- The **openscap-scanner** and **scap-security-guide** packages are installed.

Procedure

1. List all available files with security compliance profiles provided by the SCAP Security Guide project:

```
$ ls /usr/share/xml/scap/ssg/content/
ssg-rhel9-ds.xml
```

2. Display detailed information about a selected data stream using the **oscap info** subcommand. XML files containing data streams are indicated by the **-ds** string in their names. In the **Profiles** section, you can find a list of available profiles and their IDs:

```
$ oscap info /usr/share/xml/scap/ssg/content/ssg-rhel9-ds.xml
Profiles:
...
Title: Australian Cyber Security Centre (ACSC) Essential Eight
Id: xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_e8
Title: Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA)
Id: xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_hipaa
Title: PCI-DSS v3.2.1 Control Baseline for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9
Id: xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_pci-dss
...
```

3. Select a profile from the data stream file and display additional details about the selected profile. To do so, use **oscap info** with the **--profile** option followed by the last section of the ID displayed in the output of the previous command. For example, the ID of the HIPAA profile is **xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_hipaa**, and the value for the **--profile** option is **hipaa**:


```
$ oscap info --profile hipaa /usr/share/xml/scap/ssg/content/ssg-rhel9-ds.xml
...
Profile
Title: Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA)

Description: The HIPAA Security Rule establishes U.S. national standards to protect
individuals' electronic personal health information that is created, received, used, or
maintained by a covered entity.
...
```

Additional resources

- **scap-security-guide(8)** man page on your system
- [OpenSCAP memory consumption problems](#)

6.3.4. Assessing configuration compliance with a specific baseline

You can determine whether your system or a remote system conforms to a specific baseline, and save the results in a report by using the **oscap** command-line tool.

Prerequisites

- The **openscap-scanner** and **scap-security-guide** packages are installed.
- You know the ID of the profile within the baseline with which the system should comply. To find the ID, see the [Viewing profiles for configuration compliance](#) section.

Procedure

1. Scan the local system for compliance with the selected profile and save the scan results to a file:

```
$ oscap xccdf eval --report <scan-report.html> --profile <profileID>
/usr/share/xml/scap/ssg/content/ssg-rhel9-ds.xml
```

Replace:

- **<scan-report.html>** with the file name where **oscap** saves the scan results.
 - **<profileID>** with the profile ID with which the system should comply, for example, **hipaa**.
2. Optional: Scan a remote system for compliance with the selected profile and save the scan results to a file:

```
$ oscap-ssh <username>@<hostname> <port> xccdf eval --report <scan-report.html> --
profile <profileID> /usr/share/xml/scap/ssg/content/ssg-rhel9-ds.xml
```

Replace:

- **<username>@<hostname>** with the user name and host name of the remote system.
- **<port>** with the port number through which you can access the remote system.
- **<scan-report.html>** with the file name where **oscap** saves the scan results.

- **<profileID>** with the profile ID with which the system should comply, for example, **hipaa**.

Additional resources

- **scap-security-guide(8)** man page on your system
- **SCAP Security Guide** documentation in the `/usr/share/doc/scap-security-guide/` directory
- `/usr/share/doc/scap-security-guide/guides/ssg-rhel9-guide-index.html` - [Guide to the Secure Configuration of Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9] installed with the **scap-security-guide-doc** package
- [OpenSCAP memory consumption problems](#)

6.4. REMEDIATING THE SYSTEM TO ALIGN WITH A SPECIFIC BASELINE

You can remediate the RHEL system to align with a specific baseline. You can remediate the system to align with any profile provided by the SCAP Security Guide. For the details on listing the available profiles, see the [Viewing profiles for configuration compliance](#) section.



WARNING

If not used carefully, running the system evaluation with the **Remediate** option enabled might render the system non-functional. Red Hat does not provide any automated method to revert changes made by security-hardening remediations. Remediations are supported on RHEL systems in the default configuration. If your system has been altered after the installation, running remediation might not make it compliant with the required security profile.

Prerequisites

- The **scap-security-guide** package is installed.

Procedure

1. Remediate the system by using the **oscap** command with the **--remediate** option:

```
# oscap xccdf eval --profile <profileID> --remediate /usr/share/xml/scap/ssg/content/ssg-rhel9-ds.xml
```

Replace **<profileID>** with the profile ID with which the system should comply, for example, **hipaa**.

2. Restart your system.

Verification

1. Evaluate compliance of the system with the profile, and save the scan results to a file:

■

```
$ oscap xccdf eval --report <scan-report.html> --profile <profileID>
/usr/share/xml/scap/ssg/content/ssg-rhel9-ds.xml
```

Replace:

- **<scan-report.html>** with the file name where **oscap** saves the scan results.
- **<profileID>** with the profile ID with which the system should comply, for example, **hipaa**.

Additional resources

- **scap-security-guide(8)** and **oscap(8)** man pages on your system

6.5. REMEDIATING THE SYSTEM TO ALIGN WITH A SPECIFIC BASELINE BY USING AN SSG ANSIBLE PLAYBOOK

You can remediate your system to align with a specific baseline by using an Ansible Playbook file from the SCAP Security Guide project. You can remediate to align with any profile provided by the SCAP Security Guide.



WARNING

If not used carefully, running the system evaluation with the **Remediate** option enabled might render the system non-functional. Red Hat does not provide any automated method to revert changes made by security-hardening remediations. Remediations are supported on RHEL systems in the default configuration. If your system has been altered after the installation, running remediation might not make it compliant with the required security profile.

Prerequisites

- The **scap-security-guide** package is installed.
- The **ansible-core** package is installed. See the [Ansible Installation Guide](#) for more information.
- The **rhc-worker-playbook** package is installed.
- You know the ID of the profile according to which you want to remediate your system. For details, see [Viewing profiles for configuration compliance](#).

Procedure

1. Remediate your system to align with a selected profile by using Ansible:

```
# ANSIBLE_COLLECTIONS_PATH=/usr/share/rhc-worker-
playbook/ansible/collections/ansible_collections/ ansible-playbook -i "localhost," -c local
/usr/share/scap-security-guide/ansible/rhel9-playbook-<profileID>.yaml
```

The **ANSIBLE_COLLECTIONS_PATH** environment variable is necessary for the command to run the playbook.

Replace **<profileID>** with the profile ID of the selected profile.

2. Restart the system.

Verification

- Evaluate the compliance of the system with the selected profile, and save the scan results to a file:

```
# oscap xccdf eval --profile <profileID> --report <scan-report.html>
/usr/share/xml/scap/ssg/content/ssg-rhel9-ds.xml
```

Replace **<scan-report.html>** with the file name where **oscap** saves the scan results.

Additional resources

- **scap-security-guide(8)** and **oscap(8)** man pages on your system
- [Ansible Documentation](#)

6.6. CREATING A REMEDIATION ANSIBLE PLAYBOOK TO ALIGN THE SYSTEM WITH A SPECIFIC BASELINE

You can create an Ansible Playbook that contains only the remediations that are required to align your system with a specific baseline. This playbook is smaller because it does not cover already satisfied requirements. Creating the playbook does not modify your system in any way, you only prepare a file for later application.



NOTE

In RHEL 9, Ansible Engine is replaced by the **ansible-core** package, which contains only built-in modules. Note that many Ansible remediations use modules from the community and Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX) collections, which are not included in the built-in modules. In this case, you can use Bash remediations as a substitute for Ansible remediations. The Red Hat Connector in RHEL 9.0 includes the Ansible modules necessary for the remediation playbooks to function with Ansible Core.

Prerequisites

- The **scap-security-guide** package is installed.
- The **ansible-core** package is installed. See the [Ansible Installation Guide](#) for more information.
- The **rhc-worker-playbook** package is installed.
- You know the ID of the profile according to which you want to remediate your system. For details, see [Viewing profiles for configuration compliance](#).

Procedure

1. Scan the system and save the results:

```
# oscap xccdf eval --profile <profileID> --results <profile-results.xml>
/usr/share/xml/scap/ssg/content/ssg-rhel9-ds.xml
```

- Find the value of the result ID in the file with the results:

```
# oscap info <profile-results.xml>
```

- Generate an Ansible Playbook based on the file generated in step 1:

```
# oscap xccdf generate fix --fix-type ansible --result-id xccdf_org.open-  
scap_testresult_xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_<profileID> --output <profile-  
remediations.yml> <profile-results.xml>
```

- Review that the generated **<profile-remediations.yml>** file contains Ansible remediations for rules that failed in the scan performed in step 1.
- Remediate your system to align with a selected profile by using Ansible:

```
# ANSIBLE_COLLECTIONS_PATH=/usr/share/rhc-worker-  
playbook/ansible/collections/ansible_collections/ ansible-playbook -i "localhost," -c local  
<profile-remediations.yml>
```

The **ANSIBLE_COLLECTIONS_PATH** environment variable is necessary for the command to run the playbook.



WARNING

If not used carefully, running the system evaluation with the **Remediate** option enabled might render the system non-functional. Red Hat does not provide any automated method to revert changes made by security-hardening remediations. Remediations are supported on RHEL systems in the default configuration. If your system has been altered after the installation, running remediation might not make it compliant with the required security profile.

Verification

- Evaluate the compliance of the system with the selected profile, and save the scan results to a file:

```
# oscap xccdf eval --profile <profileID> --report <scan-report.html>  
/usr/share/xml/scap/ssg/content/ssg-rhel9-ds.xml
```

Replace **<scan-report.html>** with the file name where **oscap** saves the scan results.

Additional resources

- scap-security-guide(8)** and **oscap(8)** man pages on your system
- [Ansible Documentation](#)

6.7. CREATING A REMEDIATION BASH SCRIPT FOR A LATER APPLICATION

Use this procedure to create a Bash script containing remediations that align your system with a security profile such as HIPAA. Using the following steps, you do not do any modifications to your system, you only prepare a file for later application.

Prerequisites

- The **scap-security-guide** package is installed on your RHEL system.

Procedure

1. Use the **oscap** command to scan the system and to save the results to an XML file. In the following example, **oscap** evaluates the system against the **hipaa** profile:

```
# oscap xccdf eval --profile hipaa --results <hipaa-results.xml>
/usr/share/xml/scap/ssg/content/ssg-rhel9-ds.xml
```

2. Find the value of the result ID in the file with the results:

```
# oscap info <hipaa-results.xml>
```

3. Generate a Bash script based on the results file generated in step 1:

```
# oscap xccdf generate fix --fix-type bash --result-id <xccdf_org.open-
scap_testresult_xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_hipaa> --output <hipaa-
remediations.sh> <hipaa-results.xml>
```

4. The **<hipaa-remediations.sh>** file contains remediations for rules that failed during the scan performed in step 1. After reviewing this generated file, you can apply it with the **./<hipaa-remediations.sh>** command when you are in the same directory as this file.

Verification

- In a text editor of your choice, review that the **<hipaa-remediations.sh>** file contains rules that failed in the scan performed in step 1.

Additional resources

- **scap-security-guide(8)**, **oscap(8)**, and **bash(1)** man pages on your system

6.8. SCANNING THE SYSTEM WITH A CUSTOMIZED PROFILE USING SCAP WORKBENCH

SCAP Workbench, which is contained in the **scap-workbench** package, is a graphical utility that enables users to perform configuration and vulnerability scans on a single local or a remote system, perform remediation of the system, and generate reports based on scan evaluations. Note that **SCAP Workbench** has limited functionality compared with the **oscap** command-line utility. **SCAP Workbench** processes security content in the form of data stream files.

6.8.1. Using SCAP Workbench to scan and remediate the system

To evaluate your system against the selected security policy, use the following procedure.

Prerequisites

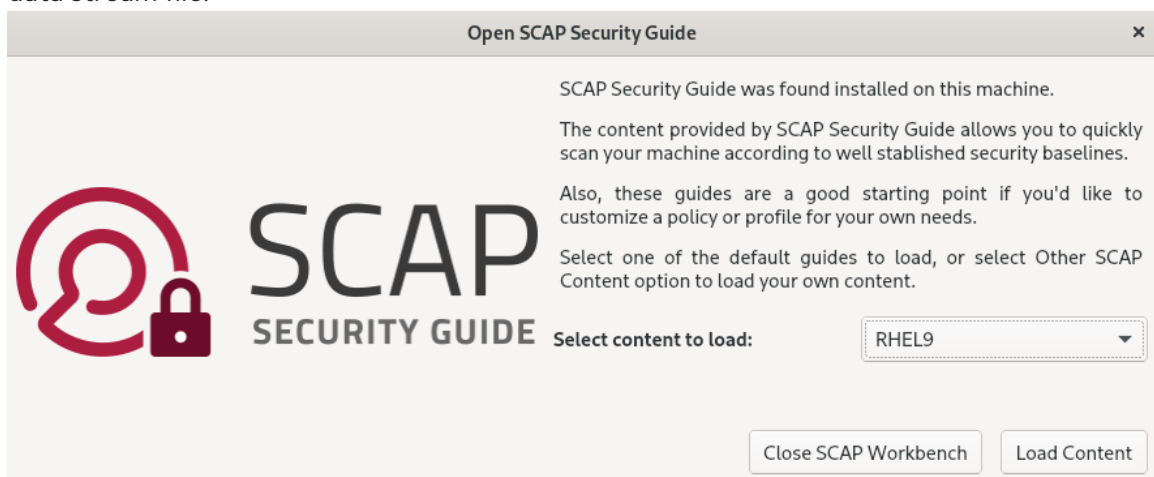
- The **scap-workbench** package is installed on your system.

Procedure

1. To run **SCAP Workbench** from the **GNOME Classic** desktop environment, press the **Super** key to enter the **Activities Overview**, type **scap-workbench**, and then press **Enter**. Alternatively, use:

```
$ scap-workbench &
```

2. Select a security policy using either of the following options:
 - **Load Content** button on the starting window
 - **Open content from SCAP Security Guide**
 - **Open Other Content** in the **File** menu, and search the respective XCCDF, SCAP RPM, or data stream file.



3. You can allow automatic correction of the system configuration by selecting the **Remediate** check box. With this option enabled, **SCAP Workbench** attempts to change the system configuration in accordance with the security rules applied by the policy. This process should fix the related checks that fail during the system scan.



WARNING

If not used carefully, running the system evaluation with the **Remediate** option enabled might render the system non-functional. Red Hat does not provide any automated method to revert changes made by security-hardening remediations. Remediations are supported on RHEL systems in the default configuration. If your system has been altered after the installation, running remediation might not make it compliant with the required security profile.

4. Scan your system with the selected profile by clicking the **Scan** button.

ssg-rhel9-ds.xml - SCAP Workbench

File Help

Title Guide to the Secure Configuration of Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9

Customization None selected

Profile PCI-DSS v3.2.1 Control Baseline for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 (121) **Customize**

Target ☒ Local Machine ☐ Remote Machine (over SSH)

Rules **Expand all**

Verify Group Who Owns shadow File	pass
Verify User Who Owns group File	pass
Verify User Who Owns passwd File	pass
Verify User Who Owns shadow File	pass
Verify Permissions on group File	pass
Verify Permissions on passwd File	pass
Verify Permissions on shadow File	pass
The Chronyd service is enabled	pass
A remote time server for Chrony is configured	pass
Distribute the SSH Server configuration to multiple files in a config directory.	pass
Enable Smartcards in SSSD	pass

100% (121 results, 121 rules selected)

Clear **Save Results** **Generate remediation role** **Show Report**

Processing has been finished!

5. To store the scan results in form of an XCCDF, ARF, or HTML file, click the **Save Results** combo box. Choose the **HTML Report** option to generate the scan report in human-readable format. The XCCDF and ARF (data stream) formats are suitable for further automatic processing. You can repeatedly choose all three options.
6. To export results-based remediations to a file, use the **Generate remediation role** pop-up menu.

6.8.2. Customizing a security profile with SCAP Workbench

You can customize a security profile by changing parameters in certain rules (for example, minimum password length), removing rules that you cover in a different way, and selecting additional rules, to implement internal policies. You cannot define new rules by customizing a profile.

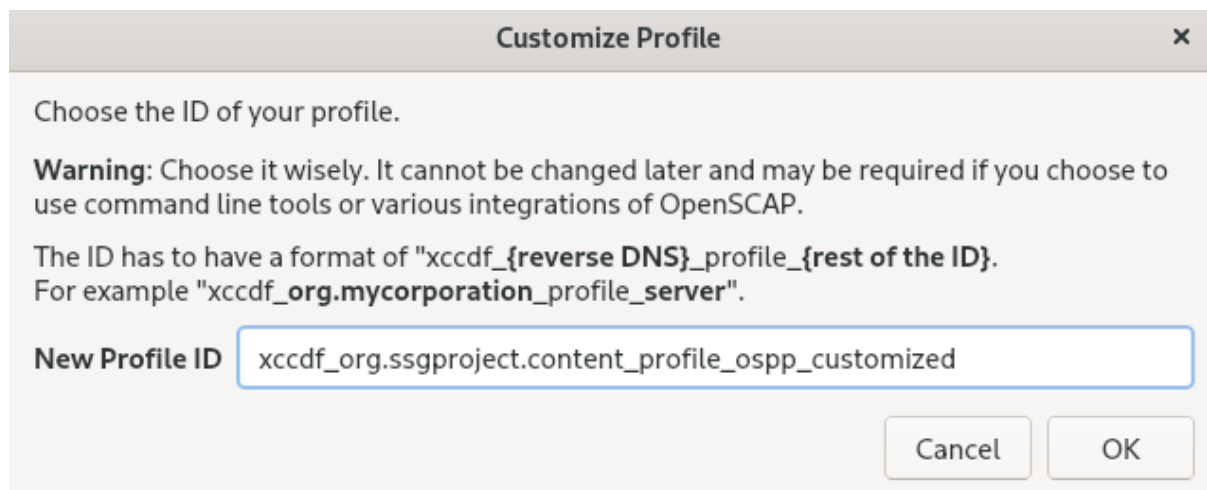
The following procedure demonstrates the use of **SCAP Workbench** for customizing (tailoring) a profile. You can also save the tailored profile for use with the **oscapp** command-line utility.

Prerequisites

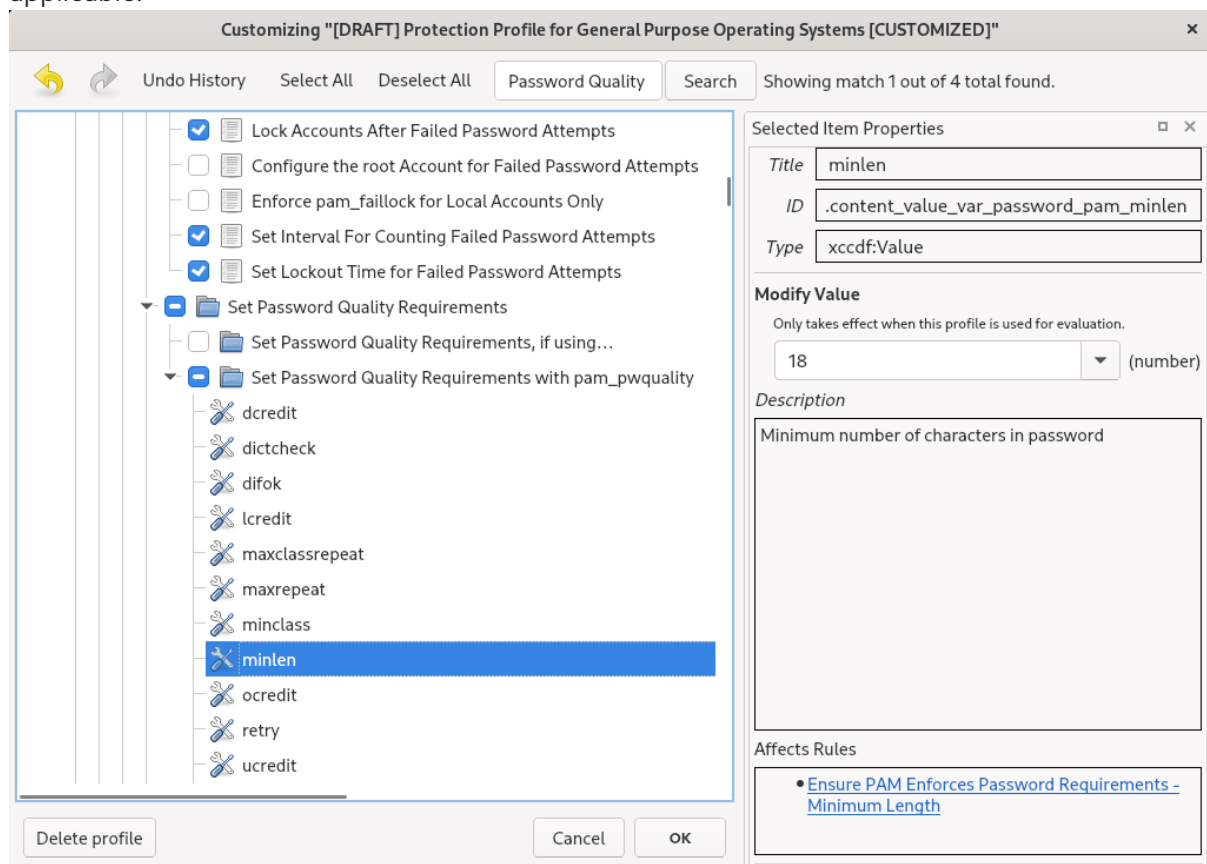
- The **scap-workbench** package is installed on your system.

Procedure

1. Run **SCAP Workbench**, and select the profile to customize by using either **Open content from SCAP Security Guide** or **Open Other Content** in the **File** menu.
2. To adjust the selected security profile according to your needs, click the **Customize** button. This opens the new Customization window that enables you to modify the currently selected profile without changing the original data stream file. Choose a new profile ID.



3. Find a rule to modify using either the tree structure with rules organized into logical groups or the **Search** field.
4. Include or exclude rules using check boxes in the tree structure, or modify values in rules where applicable.



5. Confirm the changes by clicking the **OK** button.
6. To store your changes permanently, use one of the following options:
 - Save a customization file separately by using **Save Customization Only** in the **File** menu.

- Save all security content at once by **Save All** in the **File** menu.
If you select the **Into a directory** option, **SCAP Workbench** saves both the data stream file and the customization file to the specified location. You can use this as a backup solution.

By selecting the **As RPM** option, you can instruct **SCAP Workbench** to create an RPM package containing the data stream file and the customization file. This is useful for distributing the security content to systems that cannot be scanned remotely, and for delivering the content for further processing.

7. Because **SCAP Workbench** does not support results-based remediations for tailored profiles, use the exported remediations with the **oscap** command-line utility.

6.8.3. Additional resources

- **scap-workbench(8)** man page on your system
- `/usr/share/doc/scap-workbench/user_manual.html` file provided by the **scap-workbench** package
- [Deploy customized SCAP policies with Satellite 6.x](#) (Red Hat Knowledgebase)

6.9. DEPLOYING SYSTEMS THAT ARE COMPLIANT WITH A SECURITY PROFILE IMMEDIATELY AFTER AN INSTALLATION

You can use the OpenSCAP suite to deploy RHEL systems that are compliant with a security profile, such as OSP, PCI-DSS, and HIPAA profile, immediately after the installation process. Using this deployment method, you can apply specific rules that cannot be applied later using remediation scripts, for example, a rule for password strength and partitioning.

6.9.1. Profiles not compatible with Server with GUI

Certain security profiles provided as part of the **SCAP Security Guide** are not compatible with the extended package set included in the **Server with GUI** base environment. Therefore, do not select **Server with GUI** when installing systems compliant with one of the following profiles:

Table 6.1. Profiles not compatible with Server with GUI

Profile name	Profile ID	Justification	Notes
[DRAFT] CIS Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 Benchmark for Level 2 - Server	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cis	Packages xorg-x11-server-Xorg , xorg-x11-server-common , xorg-x11-server-utils , and xorg-x11-server-Xwayland are part of the Server with GUI package set, but the policy requires their removal.	

Profile name	Profile ID	Justification	Notes
[DRAFT] CIS Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 Benchmark for Level 1 – Server	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cis_server_l1	Packages xorg-x11-server-Xorg , xorg-x11-server-common , xorg-x11-server-utils , and xorg-x11-server-Xwayland are part of the Server with GUI package set, but the policy requires their removal.	
DISA STIG for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_stig	Packages xorg-x11-server-Xorg , xorg-x11-server-common , xorg-x11-server-utils , and xorg-x11-server-Xwayland are part of the Server with GUI package set, but the policy requires their removal.	To install a RHEL system as a Server with GUI aligned with DISA STIG, you can use the DISA STIG with GUI profile BZ#1648162

6.9.2. Deploying baseline-compliant RHEL systems using the graphical installation

Use this procedure to deploy a RHEL system that is aligned with a specific baseline. This example uses Protection Profile for General Purpose Operating System (OSPP).



WARNING

Certain security profiles provided as part of the **SCAP Security Guide** are not compatible with the extended package set included in the **Server with GUI** base environment. For additional details, see [Profiles not compatible with a GUI server](#).

Prerequisites

- You have booted into the **graphical** installation program. Note that the **OSCAP Anaconda Add-on** does not support interactive text-only installation.
- You have accessed the **Installation Summary** window.

Procedure

1. From the **Installation Summary** window, click **Software Selection**. The **Software Selection** window opens.

2. From the **Base Environment** pane, select the **Server** environment. You can select only one base environment.
3. Click **Done** to apply the setting and return to the **Installation Summary** window.
4. Because OSPP has strict partitioning requirements that must be met, create separate partitions for **/boot**, **/home**, **/var**, **/tmp**, **/var/log**, **/var/tmp**, and **/var/log/audit**.
5. Click **Security Policy**. The **Security Policy** window opens.
6. To enable security policies on the system, toggle the **Apply security policy** switch to **ON**.
7. Select **Protection Profile for General Purpose Operating Systems** from the profile pane.
8. Click **Select Profile** to confirm the selection.
9. Confirm the changes in the **Changes that were done or need to be done** pane that is displayed at the bottom of the window. Complete any remaining manual changes.
10. Complete the graphical installation process.



NOTE

The graphical installation program automatically creates a corresponding Kickstart file after a successful installation. You can use the **/root/anaconda-ks.cfg** file to automatically install OSPP-compliant systems.

Verification

- To check the current status of the system after installation is complete, reboot the system and start a new scan:

```
# oscap xccdf eval --profile ospp --report eval_postinstall_report.html
/usr/share/xml/scap/ssg/content/ssg-rhel9-ds.xml
```

Additional resources

- [Configuring manual partitioning](#)

6.9.3. Deploying baseline-compliant RHEL systems using Kickstart

You can deploy RHEL systems that are aligned with a specific baseline. This example uses Protection Profile for General Purpose Operating System (OSPP).

Prerequisites

- The **scap-security-guide** package is installed on your RHEL 9 system.

Procedure

1. Open the **/usr/share/scap-security-guide/kickstart/ssg-rhel9-ospp-ks.cfg** Kickstart file in an editor of your choice.

2. Update the partitioning scheme to fit your configuration requirements. For OSPP compliance, the separate partitions for **/boot**, **/home**, **/var**, **/tmp**, **/var/log**, **/var/tmp**, and **/var/log/audit** must be preserved, and you can only change the size of the partitions.
3. Start a Kickstart installation as described in [Performing an automated installation using Kickstart](#).



IMPORTANT

Passwords in Kickstart files are not checked for OSPP requirements.

Verification

- To check the current status of the system after installation is complete, reboot the system and start a new scan:

```
# oscap xccdf eval --profile ospp --report eval_postinstall_report.html
/usr/share/xml/scap/ssg/content/ssg-rhel9-ds.xml
```

Additional resources

- [OSCAP Anaconda Add-on](#)
- [Kickstart commands and options reference: %addon org_fedora_oscap](#)

6.10. SCANNING CONTAINER AND CONTAINER IMAGES FOR VULNERABILITIES

Use this procedure to find security vulnerabilities in a container or a container image.

Prerequisites

- The **openscap-utils** and **bzip2** packages are installed.

Procedure

1. Download the latest RHSA OVAL definitions for your system:

```
# wget -O - https://www.redhat.com/security/data/oval/v2/RHEL9/rhel-9.oval.xml.bz2 | bzip2 -
-decompress > rhel-9.oval.xml
```

2. Get the ID of a container or a container image, for example:

```
# podman images
REPOSITORY                                TAG    IMAGE ID    CREATED    SIZE
registry.access.redhat.com/ubi9/ubi      latest  096cae65a207  7 weeks ago  239 MB
```

3. Scan the container or the container image for vulnerabilities and save results to the *vulnerability.html* file:

```
# oscap-podman 096cae65a207 oval eval --report vulnerability.html rhel-9.oval.xml
```

Note that the **oscap-podman** command requires root privileges, and the ID of a container is the first argument.

Verification

- Check the results in a browser of your choice, for example:

```
$ firefox vulnerability.html &
```

Additional resources

- For more information, see the **oscap-podman(8)** and **oscap(8)** man pages.

6.11. ASSESSING SECURITY COMPLIANCE OF A CONTAINER OR A CONTAINER IMAGE WITH A SPECIFIC BASELINE

You can assess the compliance of your container or a container image with a specific security baseline, such as Operating System Protection Profile (OSPP), Payment Card Industry Data Security Standard (PCI-DSS), and Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA).

Prerequisites

- The **openscap-utils** and **scap-security-guide** packages are installed.
- You have root access to the system.

Procedure

1. Find the ID of a container or a container image:
 - a. To find the ID of a container, enter the **podman ps -a** command.
 - b. To find the ID of a container image, enter the **podman images** command.
2. Evaluate the compliance of the container or container image with a profile and save the scan results into a file:

```
# oscap-podman <ID> xccdf eval --report <scan-report.html> --profile <profileID>  
/usr/share/xml/scap/ssg/content/ssg-rhel9-ds.xml
```

Replace:

- **<ID>** with the ID of your container or container image
- **<scan-report.html>** with the file name where **oscap** saves the scan results
- **<profileID>** with the profile ID with which the system should comply, for example, **hipaa**, **ospp**, or **pci-dss**

Verification

- Check the results in a browser of your choice, for example:

```
$ firefox <scan-report.html> &
```

**NOTE**

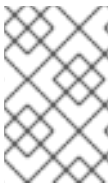
The rules marked as **notapplicable** apply only to bare-metal and virtualized systems and not to containers or container images.

Additional resources

- **oscap-podman(8)** and **scap-security-guide(8)** man pages.
- `/usr/share/doc/scap-security-guide/` directory.

6.12. SCAP SECURITY GUIDE PROFILES SUPPORTED IN RHEL 9

Use only the SCAP content provided in the particular minor release of RHEL. This is because components that participate in hardening are sometimes updated with new capabilities. SCAP content changes to reflect these updates, but it is not always compatible with earlier versions.

**NOTE**

You can get the information relevant for the version of **scap-security-guide** RPM installed on your system by using the **oscap info** command. For more information, see [Viewing profiles for configuration compliance](#).

In the following tables, you can find the profiles provided in RHEL 9, together with the version of the policy with which the profile aligns.

Table 6.2. SCAP Security Guide profiles supported in RHEL 9.6

Profile name	Profile ID	Policy version
French National Agency for the Security of Information Systems (ANSSI) BP-028 Enhanced Level	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_anssi_bp28_enhanced	2.0
French National Agency for the Security of Information Systems (ANSSI) BP-028 High Level	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_anssi_bp28_high	2.0
French National Agency for the Security of Information Systems (ANSSI) BP-028 Intermediary Level	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_anssi_bp28_intermediary	2.0
French National Agency for the Security of Information Systems (ANSSI) BP-028 Minimal Level	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_anssi_bp28_minimal	2.0
CCN Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 - Advanced	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ccn_advanced	2022-10
CCN Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 - Basic	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ccn_basic	2022-10

Profile name	Profile ID	Policy version
CCN Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 - Intermediate	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ccn_intermediate	2022-10
CIS Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 Benchmark for Level 2 - Server	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cis	2.0.0
CIS Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 Benchmark for Level 1 - Server	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cis_server_l1	2.0.0
CIS Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 Benchmark for Level 1 - Workstation	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cis_workstation_l1	2.0.0
CIS Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 Benchmark for Level 2 - Workstation	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cis_workstation_l2	2.0.0
[DRAFT] Unclassified Information in Non-federal Information Systems and Organizations (NIST 800-171)	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cui	r2
Australian Cyber Security Centre (ACSC) Essential Eight	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_e8	not versioned
Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA)	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_hipaa	not versioned
Australian Cyber Security Centre (ACSC) ISM Official	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ism_o	not versioned
Protection Profile for General Purpose Operating Systems	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ospp	4.3
PCI-DSS v3.2.1 Control Baseline for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_pci-dss	4.0.1
The Defense Information Systems Agency Security Technical Implementation Guide (DISA STIG) for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_stig	V2R3
The Defense Information Systems Agency Security Technical Implementation Guide (DISA STIG) with GUI for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_stig_gui	V2R3

Profile name	Profile ID	Policy version
CCN Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 - Basic	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ccn_basic	2022-10
CCN Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 - Intermediate	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ccn_intermediate	2022-10
CCN Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 - Advanced	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ccn_advanced	2022-10

Table 6.3. SCAP Security Guide profiles supported in RHEL 9.5

Profile name	Profile ID	Policy version
French National Agency for the Security of Information Systems (ANSSI) BP-028 Enhanced Level	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_anssi_bp28_enhanced	2.0
French National Agency for the Security of Information Systems (ANSSI) BP-028 High Level	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_anssi_bp28_high	2.0
French National Agency for the Security of Information Systems (ANSSI) BP-028 Intermediary Level	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_anssi_bp28_intermediary	2.0
French National Agency for the Security of Information Systems (ANSSI) BP-028 Minimal Level	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_anssi_bp28_minimal	2.0
CCN Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 - Advanced	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ccn_advanced	2022-10
CCN Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 - Basic	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ccn_basic	2022-10
CCN Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 - Intermediate	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ccn_intermediate	2022-10
CIS Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 Benchmark for Level 2 - Server	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cis	2.0.0
CIS Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 Benchmark for Level 1 - Server	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cis_server_l1	2.0.0

Profile name	Profile ID	Policy version
CIS Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 Benchmark for Level 1 - Workstation	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cis_workstation_l1	2.0.0
CIS Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 Benchmark for Level 2 - Workstation	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cis_workstation_l2	2.0.0
[DRAFT] Unclassified Information in Non-federal Information Systems and Organizations (NIST 800-171)	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cui	r2
Australian Cyber Security Centre (ACSC) Essential Eight	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_e8	not versioned
Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA)	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_hipaa	not versioned
Australian Cyber Security Centre (ACSC) ISM Official	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ism_o	not versioned
Protection Profile for General Purpose Operating Systems	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ospp	4.3
PCI-DSS v3.2.1 Control Baseline for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_pci-dss	RHEL 9.5.0:4.0 RHEL 9.5.1 and later:4.0.1
The Defense Information Systems Agency Security Technical Implementation Guide (DISA STIG) for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_stig	V2R3
The Defense Information Systems Agency Security Technical Implementation Guide (DISA STIG) with GUI for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_stig_gui	V2R3
CCN Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 - Basic	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ccn_basic	2022-10
CCN Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 - Intermediate	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ccn_intermediate	2022-10
CCN Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 - Advanced	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ccn_advanced	2022-10

Table 6.4. SCAP Security Guide profiles supported in RHEL 9.4

Profile name	Profile ID	Policy version
French National Agency for the Security of Information Systems (ANSSI) BP-028 Enhanced Level	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_anssi_bp28_enhanced	2.0
French National Agency for the Security of Information Systems (ANSSI) BP-028 High Level	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_anssi_bp28_high	2.0
French National Agency for the Security of Information Systems (ANSSI) BP-028 Intermediary Level	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_anssi_bp28_intermediary	2.0
French National Agency for the Security of Information Systems (ANSSI) BP-028 Minimal Level	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_anssi_bp28_minimal	2.0
CCN Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 - Advanced	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ccn_advanced	2022-10
CCN Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 - Basic	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ccn_basic	2022-10
CCN Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 - Intermediate	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ccn_intermediate	2022-10
CIS Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 Benchmark for Level 2 - Server	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cis	RHEL 9.4.0 to RHEL 9.4.2:1.0.0 RHEL 9.4.3 and later:2.0.0
CIS Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 Benchmark for Level 1 - Server	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cis_server_l1	RHEL 9.4.0 to RHEL 9.4.2:1.0.0 RHEL 9.4.3 and later:2.0.0
CIS Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 Benchmark for Level 1 - Workstation	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cis_workstation_l1	RHEL 9.4.0 to RHEL 9.4.2:1.0.0 RHEL 9.4.3 and later:2.0.0
CIS Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 Benchmark for Level 2 - Workstation	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cis_workstation_l2	RHEL 9.4.0 to RHEL 9.4.2:1.0.0 RHEL 9.4.3 and later:2.0.0
[DRAFT] Unclassified Information in Non-federal Information Systems and Organizations (NIST 800-171)	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cui	r2
Australian Cyber Security Centre (ACSC) Essential Eight	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_e8	not versioned

Profile name	Profile ID	Policy version
Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA)	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_hipaa	not versioned
Australian Cyber Security Centre (ACSC) ISM Official	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ism_o	not versioned
Protection Profile for General Purpose Operating Systems	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ospp	4.3
PCI-DSS v3.2.1 Control Baseline for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_pci-dss	RHEL 9.4.0 to RHEL 9.4.4:4.0 RHEL 9.4.5:4.0.1
The Defense Information Systems Agency Security Technical Implementation Guide (DISA STIG) for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_stig	V2R3
The Defense Information Systems Agency Security Technical Implementation Guide (DISA STIG) with GUI for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_stig_gui	V2R3
CCN Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 - Basic	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ccn_basic	2022-10
CCN Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 - Intermediate	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ccn_intermediate	2022-10
CCN Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 - Advanced	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ccn_advanced	2022-10

Table 6.5. SCAP Security Guide profiles supported in RHEL 9.3

Profile name	Profile ID	Policy version
French National Agency for the Security of Information Systems (ANSSI) BP-028 Enhanced Level	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_anssi_bp28_enhanced	2.0
French National Agency for the Security of Information Systems (ANSSI) BP-028 High Level	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_anssi_bp28_high	2.0

Profile name	Profile ID	Policy version
French National Agency for the Security of Information Systems (ANSSI) BP-028 Intermediary Level	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_anssi_bp28_intermediary	2.0
French National Agency for the Security of Information Systems (ANSSI) BP-028 Minimal Level	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_anssi_bp28_minimal	2.0
CCN Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 - Advanced	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ccn_advanced	2022-10
CCN Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 - Basic	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ccn_basic	2022-10
CCN Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 - Intermediate	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ccn_intermediate	2022-10
CIS Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 Benchmark for Level 2 - Server	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cis	1.0.0
CIS Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 Benchmark for Level 1 - Server	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cis_server_l1	1.0.0
CIS Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 Benchmark for Level 1 - Workstation	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cis_workstation_l1	1.0.0
CIS Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 Benchmark for Level 2 - Workstation	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cis_workstation_l2	1.0.0
[DRAFT] Unclassified Information in Non-federal Information Systems and Organizations (NIST 800-171)	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cui	r2
Australian Cyber Security Centre (ACSC) Essential Eight	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_e8	not versioned
Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA)	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_hipaa	not versioned
Australian Cyber Security Centre (ACSC) ISM Official	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ism_o	not versioned

Profile name	Profile ID	Policy version
Protection Profile for General Purpose Operating Systems	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ospp	4.3
PCI-DSS v3.2.1 Control Baseline for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_pci-dss	RHEL 9.3.0 to RHEL 9.3.2:3.2.1 RHEL 9.3.3:4.0
The Defense Information Systems Agency Security Technical Implementation Guide (DISA STIG) for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_stig	RHEL 9.3.0: DRAFT ^[a] RHEL 9.3.2:VIR1 RHEL 9.3.3 and later:VIR2
The Defense Information Systems Agency Security Technical Implementation Guide (DISA STIG) with GUI for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_stig_gui	RHEL 9.3.0: DRAFT ^[a] RHEL 9.3.2:VIR1 RHEL 9.3.3 and later:VIR2
CCN Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 - Basic	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ccn_basic	2022-10
CCN Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 - Intermediate	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ccn_intermediate	2022-10
CCN Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 - Advanced	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ccn_advanced	2022-10
[a] DISA has not yet published an official benchmark for RHEL 9		

Table 6.6. SCAP Security Guide profiles supported in RHEL 9.2

Profile name	Profile ID	Policy version
French National Agency for the Security of Information Systems (ANSSI) BP-028 Enhanced Level	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_anssi_bp28_enhanced	RHEL 9.2.0 to RHEL 9.2.2:1.2 RHEL 9.2.3 and later:2.0
French National Agency for the Security of Information Systems (ANSSI) BP-028 High Level	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_anssi_bp28_high	RHEL 9.2.0 to RHEL 9.2.2:1.2 RHEL 9.2.3 and later:2.0

Profile name	Profile ID	Policy version
French National Agency for the Security of Information Systems (ANSSI) BP-028 Intermediary Level	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_anssi_bp28_intermediary	RHEL 9.2.0 to RHEL 9.2.2:1.2 RHEL 9.2.3 and later:2.0
French National Agency for the Security of Information Systems (ANSSI) BP-028 Minimal Level	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_anssi_bp28_minimal	RHEL 9.2.0 to RHEL 9.2.2:1.2 RHEL 9.2.3 and later:2.0
CIS Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 Benchmark for Level 2 - Server	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cis	RHEL 9.2.0 to RHEL 9.2.10:1.0.0 RHEL 9.2.11 and later:2.0.0
CIS Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 Benchmark for Level 1 - Server	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cis_server_l1	RHEL 9.2.0 to RHEL 9.2.10:1.0.0 RHEL 9.2.11 and later:2.0.0
CIS Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 Benchmark for Level 1 - Workstation	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cis_workstation_l1	RHEL 9.2.0 to RHEL 9.2.10:1.0.0 RHEL 9.2.11 and later:2.0.0
CIS Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 Benchmark for Level 2 - Workstation	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cis_workstation_l2	RHEL 9.2.0 to RHEL 9.2.10:1.0.0 RHEL 9.2.11 and later:2.0.0
[DRAFT] Unclassified Information in Non-federal Information Systems and Organizations (NIST 800-171)	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cui	r2
Australian Cyber Security Centre (ACSC) Essential Eight	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_e8	not versioned
Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA)	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_hipaa	not versioned
Australian Cyber Security Centre (ACSC) ISM Official	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ism_o	not versioned
Protection Profile for General Purpose Operating Systems	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ospp	4.2.1
PCI-DSS v3.2.1 Control Baseline for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_pci-dss	RHEL 9.2.0 to RHEL 9.2.5:3.2.1 RHEL 9.2.6 to RHEL 9.2.12:4.0 RHEL 9.2.13 and later:4.0.1

Profile name	Profile ID	Policy version
The Defense Information Systems Agency Security Technical Implementation Guide (DISA STIG) for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_stig	V2R3
The Defense Information Systems Agency Security Technical Implementation Guide (DISA STIG) with GUI for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_stig_gui	V2R3
CCN Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 - Basic	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ccn_basic	2022-10
CCN Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 - Intermediate	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ccn_intermediate	2022-10
CCN Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 - Advanced	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ccn_advanced	2022-10

Table 6.7. SCAP Security Guide profiles supported in RHEL 9.1

Profile name	Profile ID	Policy version
French National Agency for the Security of Information Systems (ANSSI) BP-028 Enhanced Level	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_anssi_bp28_enhanced	1.2
French National Agency for the Security of Information Systems (ANSSI) BP-028 High Level	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_anssi_bp28_high	1.2
French National Agency for the Security of Information Systems (ANSSI) BP-028 Intermediary Level	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_anssi_bp28_intermediary	1.2
French National Agency for the Security of Information Systems (ANSSI) BP-028 Minimal Level	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_anssi_bp28_minimal	1.2
CIS Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 Benchmark for Level 2 - Server	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cis	RHEL 9.1.0 and RHEL 9.1.1:DRAFT ^[a] RHEL 9.1.2 and later:1.0.0

Profile name	Profile ID	Policy version
CIS Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 Benchmark for Level 1 – Server	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cis_server_l1	RHEL 9.1.0 and RHEL 9.1.1:DRAFT [a] RHEL 9.1.2 and later:1.0.0
CIS Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 Benchmark for Level 1 – Workstation	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cis_workstation_l1	RHEL 9.1.0 and RHEL 9.1.1:DRAFT [a] RHEL 9.1.2 and later:1.0.0
CIS Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 Benchmark for Level 2 – Workstation	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cis_workstation_l2	RHEL 9.1.0 and RHEL 9.1.1:DRAFT [a] RHEL 9.1.2 and later:1.0.0
[DRAFT] Unclassified Information in Non-federal Information Systems and Organizations (NIST 800-171)	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cui	r2
Australian Cyber Security Centre (ACSC) Essential Eight	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_e8	not versioned
Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA)	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_hipaa	not versioned
Australian Cyber Security Centre (ACSC) ISM Official	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ism_o	not versioned
Protection Profile for General Purpose Operating Systems	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ospp	4.2.1
PCI-DSS v3.2.1 Control Baseline for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_pci-dss	3.2.1
[DRAFT] The Defense Information Systems Agency Security Technical Implementation Guide (DISA STIG) for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_stig	DRAFT [a]
[DRAFT] The Defense Information Systems Agency Security Technical Implementation Guide (DISA STIG) with GUI for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_stig_gui	DRAFT [a]

Profile name	Profile ID	Policy version
[a] CIS has not yet published an official benchmark for RHEL 9		

Table 6.8. SCAP Security Guide profiles supported in RHEL 9.0

Profile name	Profile ID	Policy version
French National Agency for the Security of Information Systems (ANSSI) BP-028 Enhanced Level	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_anssi_bp28_enhanced	RHEL 9.0.0 to RHEL 9.0.10:1.2 RHEL 9.0.11 and later:2.0
French National Agency for the Security of Information Systems (ANSSI) BP-028 High Level	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_anssi_bp28_high	RHEL 9.0.0 to RHEL 9.0.10:1.2 RHEL 9.0.11 and later:2.0
French National Agency for the Security of Information Systems (ANSSI) BP-028 Intermediary Level	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_anssi_bp28_intermediary	RHEL 9.0.0 to RHEL 9.0.10:1.2 RHEL 9.0.11 and later:2.0
French National Agency for the Security of Information Systems (ANSSI) BP-028 Minimal Level	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_anssi_bp28_minimal	RHEL 9.0.0 to RHEL 9.0.10:1.2 RHEL 9.0.11 and later:2.0
CIS Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 Benchmark for Level 2 - Server	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cis	RHEL 9.0.0 to RHEL 9.0.6:DRAFT [a] RHEL 9.0.7 to RHEL 9.0.19:1.0.0 RHEL 9.0.20 and later:2.0.0
CIS Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 Benchmark for Level 1 - Server	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cis_server_l1	RHEL 9.0.0 to RHEL 9.0.6:DRAFT [a] RHEL 9.0.7 to RHEL 9.0.19:1.0.0 RHEL 9.0.20 and later:2.0.0
CIS Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 Benchmark for Level 1 - Workstation	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cis_workstation_l1	RHEL 9.0.0 to RHEL 9.0.6:DRAFT [a] RHEL 9.0.7 to RHEL 9.0.19:1.0.0 RHEL 9.0.20 and later:2.0.0
CIS Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 Benchmark for Level 2 - Workstation	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cis_workstation_l2	RHEL 9.0.0 to RHEL 9.0.6:DRAFT [a] RHEL 9.0.7 to RHEL 9.0.19:1.0.0 RHEL 9.0.20 and later:2.0.0
[DRAFT] Unclassified Information in Non-federal Information Systems and Organizations (NIST 800-171)	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_cui	r2

Profile name	Profile ID	Policy version
Australian Cyber Security Centre (ACSC) Essential Eight	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_e8	not versioned
Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA)	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_hipaa	not versioned
Australian Cyber Security Centre (ACSC) ISM Official	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ism_o	not versioned
Protection Profile for General Purpose Operating Systems	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ospp	RHEL 9.0.0 to RHEL 9.0.2:DRAFT RHEL 9.0.3 and later:4.2.1
PCI-DSS v3.2.1 Control Baseline for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_pci-dss	RHEL 9.0.0 to RHEL 9.0.14:3.2.1 RHEL 9.0.15 to RHEL 9.0.21:4.0 RHEL 9.0.22 and later:4.0.1
The Defense Information Systems Agency Security Technical Implementation Guide (DISA STIG) for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_stig	V2R3
The Defense Information Systems Agency Security Technical Implementation Guide (DISA STIG) with GUI for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_stig_gui	V2R3
CCN Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 - Basic	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ccn_basic	RHEL 9.0.11 and later:2022-10
CCN Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 - Intermediate	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ccn_intermediate	RHEL 9.0.11 and later:2022-10
CCN Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 - Advanced	xccdf_org.ssgproject.content_profile_ccn_advanced	RHEL 9.0.11 and later:2022-10

6.13. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES

- [Supported versions of the SCAP Security Guide in RHEL](#)
- [The OpenSCAP project page](#) provides detailed information about the **oscap** utility and other components and projects related to SCAP.
- [The SCAP Workbench project page](#) provides detailed information about the **scap-workbench** application.
- [The SCAP Security Guide \(SSG\) project page](#) provides the latest security content for Red Hat Enterprise Linux.

- [Using OpenSCAP for security compliance and vulnerability scanning](#) - A hands-on lab on running tools based on the Security Content Automation Protocol (SCAP) standard for compliance and vulnerability scanning in RHEL.
- [Red Hat Security Demos: Creating Customized Security Policy Content to Automate Security Compliance](#) - A hands-on lab to get initial experience in automating security compliance using the tools that are included in RHEL to comply with both industry standard security policies and custom security policies. If you want training or access to these lab exercises for your team, contact your Red Hat account team for additional details.
- [Red Hat Security Demos: Defend Yourself with RHEL Security Technologies](#) - A hands-on lab to learn how to implement security at all levels of your RHEL system, using the key security technologies available to you in RHEL, including OpenSCAP. If you want training or access to these lab exercises for your team, contact your Red Hat account team for additional details.
- [National Institute of Standards and Technology \(NIST\) SCAP page](#) has a vast collection of SCAP-related materials, including SCAP publications, specifications, and the SCAP Validation Program.
- [National Vulnerability Database \(NVD\)](#) has the largest repository of SCAP content and other SCAP standards-based vulnerability management data.
- [Red Hat OVAL content repository](#) contains OVAL definitions for vulnerabilities of RHEL systems. This is the recommended source of vulnerability content.
- [MITRE CVE](#) - This is a database of publicly known security vulnerabilities provided by the MITRE corporation. For RHEL, using OVAL CVE content provided by Red Hat is recommended.
- [MITRE OVAL](#) - This is an OVAL-related project provided by the MITRE corporation. Among other OVAL-related information, these pages contain the OVAL language and a repository of OVAL content with thousands of OVAL definitions. Note that for scanning RHEL, using OVAL CVE content provided by Red Hat is recommended.
- [Managing security compliance in Red Hat Satellite](#) - This set of guides describes, among other topics, how to maintain system security on multiple systems by using OpenSCAP.

CHAPTER 7. ENSURING SYSTEM INTEGRITY WITH KEYLIME

With Keylime, you can continuously monitor the integrity of remote systems and verify the state of systems at boot. You can also send encrypted files to the monitored systems, and specify automated actions triggered whenever a monitored system fails the integrity test.

7.1. HOW KEYLIME WORKS

You can configure Keylime agents to perform one or more of the following actions:

Runtime integrity monitoring

Keylime runtime integrity monitoring continuously monitors the system on which the agent is deployed and measures the integrity of the files included in the allowlist and not included in the excludelist.

Measured boot

Keylime measured boot verifies the system state at boot.

Keylime's concept of trust is based on the Trusted Platform Module (TPM) technology. A TPM is a hardware, firmware, or virtual component with integrated cryptographic keys. By polling TPM quotes and comparing the hashes of objects, Keylime provides initial and runtime monitoring of remote systems.



IMPORTANT

Keylime running in a virtual machine or using a virtual TPM depends upon the integrity of the underlying host. Ensure you trust the host environment before relying upon Keylime measurements in a virtual environment.

Keylime consists of three main components:

Verifier

Initially and continuously verifies the integrity of the systems that run the agent. You can deploy the verifier from a package, as a container, or by using the **keylime_server** RHEL system role.

Registrar

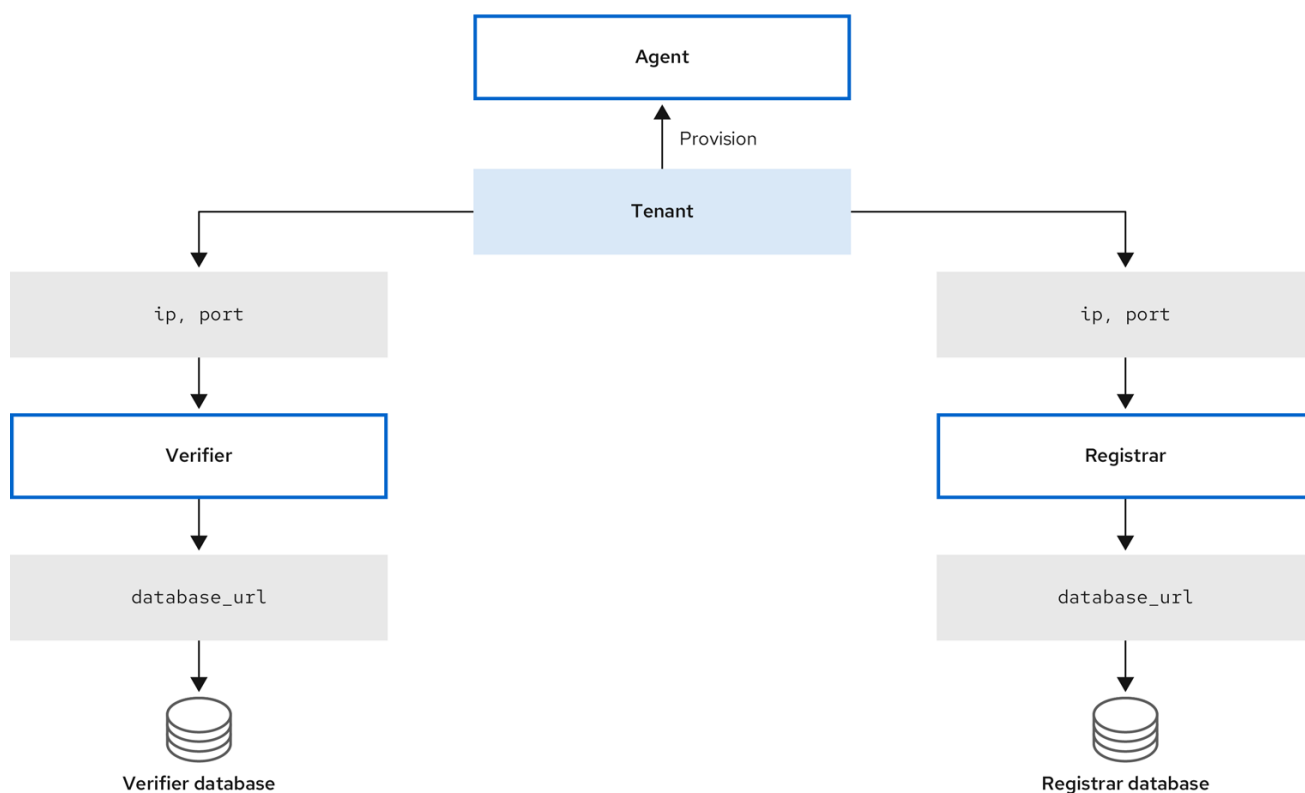
Contains a database of all agents and it hosts the public keys of the TPM vendors. You can deploy the registrar from a package, as a container, or by using the **keylime_server** RHEL system role.

Agent

Deployed to remote systems measured by the verifier.

In addition, Keylime uses the **keylime_tenant** utility for many functions, including provisioning the agents on the target systems.

Figure 7.1. Connections between Keylime components through configurations



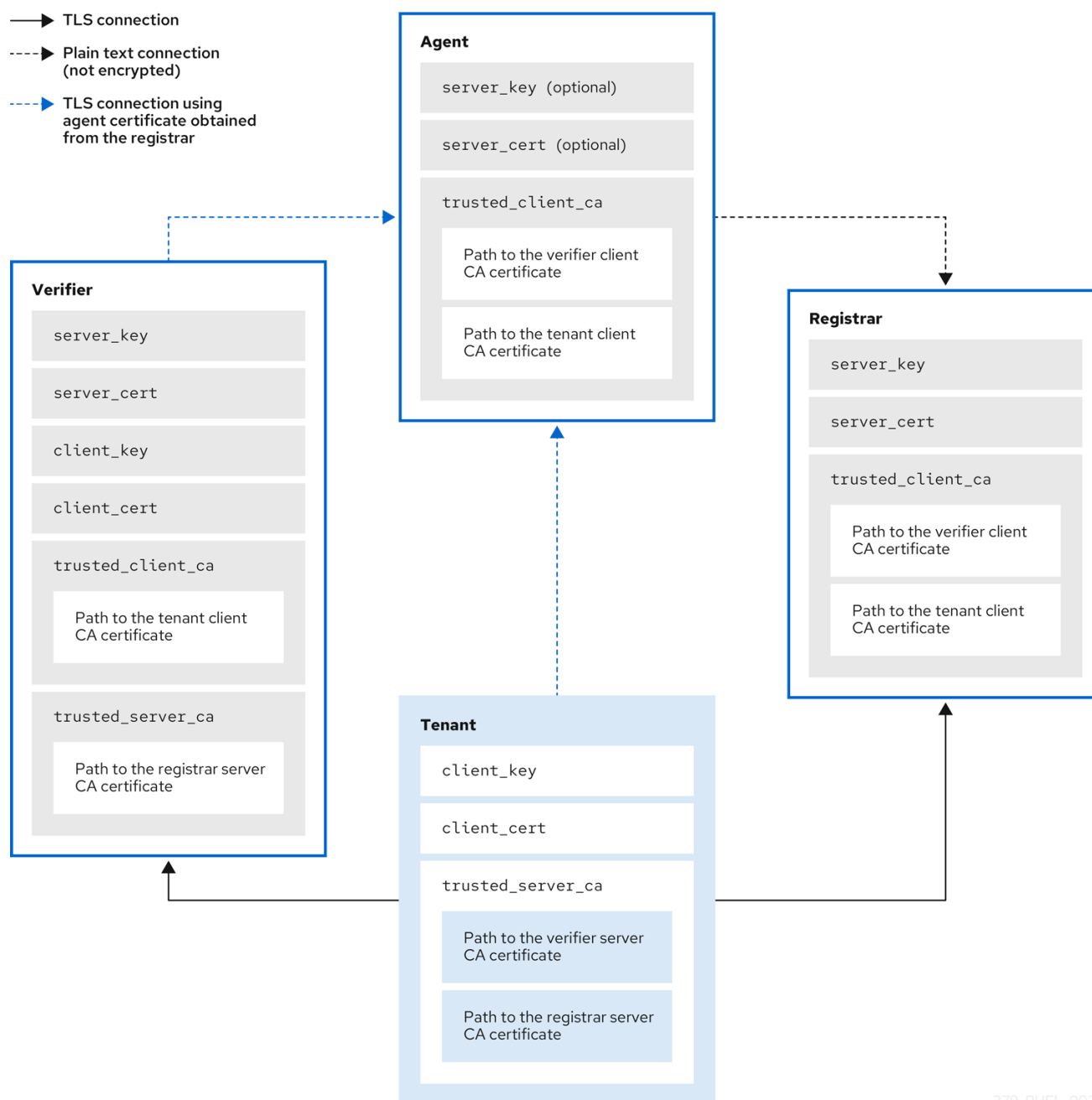
379_RHEL_0923

Keylime ensures the integrity of the monitored systems in a chain of trust by using keys and certificates exchanged between the components and the tenant. For a secure foundation of this chain, use a certificate authority (CA) that you can trust.

**NOTE**

If the agent receives no key and certificate, it generates a key and a self-signed certificate with no involvement from the CA.

Figure 7.2. Connections between Keylime components certificates and keys



379_RHEL_0923

7.2. DEPLOYING KEYLIME VERIFIER FROM A PACKAGE

The verifier is the most important component in Keylime. It performs initial and periodic checks of system integrity and supports bootstrapping a cryptographic key securely with the agent. The verifier uses mutual TLS encryption for its control interface.



IMPORTANT

To maintain the chain of trust, keep the system that runs the verifier secure and under your control.

You can install the verifier on a separate system or on the same system as the Keylime registrar, depending on your requirements. Running the verifier and registrar on separate systems provides better performance.



NOTE

To keep the configuration files organized within the drop-in directories, use file names with a two-digit number prefix, for example **/etc/keylime/verifier.conf.d/00-verifier-ip.conf**. The configuration processing reads the files inside the drop-in directory in lexicographic order and sets each option to the last value it reads.

Prerequisites

- You have **root** permissions and network connection to the system or systems on which you want to install Keylime components.
- You have valid keys and certificates from your certificate authority.
- Optional: You have access to the databases where Keylime saves data from the verifier. You can use any of the following database management systems:
 - SQLite (default)
 - PostgreSQL
 - MySQL
 - MariaDB

Procedure

1. Install the Keylime verifier:

```
# dnf install keylime-verifier
```

2. Define the IP address and port of verifier by creating a new **.conf** file in the **/etc/keylime/verifier.conf.d/** directory, for example, **/etc/keylime/verifier.conf.d/00-verifier-ip.conf**, with the following content:

```
[verifier]
ip = <verifier_IP_address>
```

- Replace **<verifier_IP_address>** with the verifier's IP address. Alternatively, use **ip = *** or **ip = 0.0.0.0** to bind the verifier to all available IP addresses.
 - Optionally, you can also change the verifier's port from the default value **8881** by using the **port** option.
3. Optional: Configure the verifier's database for the list of agents. The default configuration uses an SQLite database in the verifier's **/var/lib/keylime/cv_data.sqlite/** directory. You can define a different database by creating a new **.conf** file in the **/etc/keylime/verifier.conf.d/** directory, for example, **/etc/keylime/verifier.conf.d/00-db-url.conf**, with the following content:

```
[verifier]
database_url = <protocol>://<name>:<password>@<ip_address_or_hostname>/<properties>
```

Replace **<protocol>://<name>:<password>@<ip_address_or_hostname>/<properties>** with the URL of the database, for example, **postgresql://verifier:UQ?nRNY9g7GZzN7@198.51.100.1/verifierdb**.

Ensure that the credentials you use provide the permissions for Keylime to create the database structure.

4. Add certificates and keys to the verifier. You can either let Keylime generate them, or use existing keys and certificates:
 - With the default **tls_dir = generate** option, Keylime generates new certificates for the verifier, registrar, and tenant in the **/var/lib/keylime/cv_ca/** directory.
 - To load existing keys and certificates in the configuration, define their location in the verifier configuration. The certificates must be accessible by the **keylime** user, under which the Keylime services are running.
Create a new **.conf** file in the **/etc/keylime/verifier.conf.d/** directory, for example, **/etc/keylime/verifier.conf.d/00-keys-and-certs.conf**, with the following content:

```
[verifier]
tls_dir = /var/lib/keylime/cv_ca
server_key = </path/to/server_key>
server_key_password = <passphrase1>
server_cert = </path/to/server_cert>
trusted_client_ca = ['</path/to/ca/cert1>', '</path/to/ca/cert2>']
client_key = </path/to/client_key>
client_key_password = <passphrase2>
client_cert = </path/to/client_cert>
trusted_server_ca = ['</path/to/ca/cert3>', '</path/to/ca/cert4>']
```



NOTE

Use absolute paths to define key and certificate locations. Alternatively, relative paths are resolved from the directory defined in the **tls_dir** option.

5. Open the port in firewall:

```
# firewall-cmd --add-port 8881/tcp
# firewall-cmd --runtime-to-permanent
```

If you use a different port, replace **8881** with the port number defined in the **.conf** file.

6. Start the verifier service:

```
# systemctl enable --now keylime_verifier
```



NOTE

In the default configuration, start the **keylime_verifier** before starting the **keylime_registrar** service because the verifier creates the CA and certificates for the other Keylime components. This order is not necessary when you use custom certificates.

Verification

- Check that the **keylime_verifier** service is active and running:

```
# systemctl status keylime_verifier
```

- **keylime_verifier.service** - The Keylime verifier
Loaded: loaded (/usr/lib/systemd/system/keylime_verifier.service; disabled; vendor preset: disabled)
Active: active (running) since Wed 2022-11-09 10:10:08 EST; 1min 45s ago

Next steps

- [Section 7.4, “Deploying Keylime registrar from a package”](#) .

7.3. DEPLOYING KEYLIME VERIFIER AS A CONTAINER

The Keylime verifier performs initial and periodic checks of system integrity and supports bootstrapping a cryptographic key securely with the agent. You can configure the Keylime verifier as a container instead of the RPM method, without any binaries or packages on the host. The container deployment provides better isolation, modularity, and reproducibility of Keylime components.

After you start the container, the Keylime verifier is deployed with default configuration files. You can customize the configuration by using one or more of following methods:

- Mounting the host’s directories that contain the configuration files to the container. This is available in all versions of RHEL 9.
- Modifying the environment variables directly on the container. This is available in RHEL 9.3 and later versions. Modifying the environment variables overrides the values from the configuration files.

Prerequisites

- The **podman** package and its dependencies are installed on the system.
- Optional: You have access to a database where Keylime saves data from the verifier. You can use any of the following database management systems:
 - SQLite (default)
 - PostgreSQL
 - MySQL
 - MariaDB
- You have valid keys and certificates from your certificate authority.

Procedure

1. Optional: Install the **keylime-verifier** package to access the configuration files. You can configure the container without this package, but it might be easier to modify the configuration files provided with the package.

```
# dnf install keylime-verifier
```

2. Bind the verifier to all available IP addresses by creating a new **.conf** file in the **/etc/keylime/verifier.conf.d/** directory, for example, **/etc/keylime/verifier.conf.d/00-verifier-ip.conf**, with the following content:

```
[verifier]
ip = *
```

- Optionally, you can also change the verifier's port from the default value **8881** by using the **port** option.
3. Optional: Configure the verifier's database for the list of agents. The default configuration uses an SQLite database in the verifier's `/var/lib/keylime/cv_data.sqlite/` directory. You can define a different database by creating a new `.conf` file in the `/etc/keylime/verifier.conf.d/` directory, for example, `/etc/keylime/verifier.conf.d/00-db-url.conf`, with the following content:

```
[verifier]
database_url = <protocol>://<name>:<password>@<ip_address_or_hostname>/<properties>
```

Replace `<protocol>://<name>:<password>@<ip_address_or_hostname>/<properties>` with the URL of the database, for example, `postgresql://verifier:UQ?nRNY9g7GZzN7@198.51.100.1/verifierdb`.

Ensure that the credentials you use have the permissions for Keylime to create the database structure.

4. Add certificates and keys to the verifier. You can either let Keylime generate them, or use existing keys and certificates:
 - With the default `tls_dir = generate` option, Keylime generates new certificates for the verifier, registrar, and tenant in the `/var/lib/keylime/cv_ca/` directory.
 - To load existing keys and certificates in the configuration, define their location in the verifier configuration. The certificates must be accessible by the **keylime** user, under which the Keylime processes are running.

Create a new `.conf` file in the `/etc/keylime/verifier.conf.d/` directory, for example, `/etc/keylime/verifier.conf.d/00-keys-and-certs.conf`, with the following content:

```
[verifier]
tls_dir = /var/lib/keylime/cv_ca
server_key = </path/to/server_key>
server_cert = </path/to/server_cert>
trusted_client_ca = ['</path/to/ca/cert1>', '</path/to/ca/cert2>']
client_key = </path/to/client_key>
client_cert = </path/to/client_cert>
trusted_server_ca = ['</path/to/ca/cert3>', '</path/to/ca/cert4>']
```



NOTE

Use absolute paths to define key and certificate locations. Alternatively, relative paths are resolved from the directory defined in the `tls_dir` option.

5. Open the port in firewall:

```
# firewall-cmd --add-port 8881/tcp
# firewall-cmd --runtime-to-permanent
```

If you use a different port, replace **8881** with the port number defined in the `.conf` file.

6. Run the container:

```
$ podman run --name keylime-verifier \
-p 8881:8881 \
-v /etc/keylime/verifier.conf.d:/etc/keylime/verifier.conf.d:Z \
-v /var/lib/keylime/cv_ca:/var/lib/keylime/cv_ca:Z \
-d \
-e KEYLIME_VERIFIER_SERVER_KEY_PASSWORD=<passphrase1> \
-e KEYLIME_VERIFIER_CLIENT_KEY_PASSWORD=<passphrase2> \
registry.access.redhat.com/rhel9/keylime-verifier
```

- The **-p** option opens the default port **8881** on the host and on the container.
- The **-v** option creates a bind mount for the directory to the container.
 - With the **Z** option, Podman marks the content with a private unshared label. This means only the current container can use the private volume.
- The **-d** option runs the container detached and in the background.
- The option **-e KEYLIME_VERIFIER_SERVER_KEY_PASSWORD=<passphrase1>** defines the server key passphrase.
- The option **-e KEYLIME_VERIFIER_CLIENT_KEY_PASSWORD=<passphrase2>** defines the client key passphrase.
- You can override configuration options with environment variables by using the option **-e KEYLIME_VERIFIER_<ENVIRONMENT_VARIABLE>=<value>**. To modify additional options, insert the **-e** option separately for each environment variable. For a complete list of environment variables and their default values, see [Keylime environment variables](#).

Verification

- Check that the container is running:

```
$ podman ps -a
CONTAINER ID  IMAGE                                     COMMAND                                CREATED
STATUS       PORTS                                     NAMES
80b6b9dbf57c  registry.access.redhat.com/rhel9/keylime-verifier:latest  keylime_verifier  14
seconds ago  Up 14 seconds  0.0.0.0:8881->8881/tcp  keylime-verifier
```

Next steps

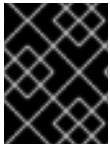
- [Install the Keylime registrar as a container](#) .

Additional resources

- For more information about Keylime components, see [How Keylime works](#).
- For more information about configuring the Keylime verifier, see [Configuring Keylime verifier](#).
- For more information about the **podman run** command, see the **podman-run(1)** man page on your system.

7.4. DEPLOYING KEYLIME REGISTRAR FROM A PACKAGE

The registrar is the Keylime component that contains a database of all agents, and it hosts the public keys of the TPM vendors. After the registrar's HTTPS service accepts trusted platform module (TPM) public keys, it presents an interface to obtain these public keys for checking quotes.



IMPORTANT

To maintain the chain of trust, keep the system that runs the registrar secure and under your control.

You can install the registrar on a separate system or on the same system as the Keylime verifier, depending on your requirements. Running the verifier and registrar on separate systems provides better performance.



NOTE

To keep the configuration files organized within the drop-in directories, use file names with a two-digit number prefix, for example **/etc/keylime/registrar.conf.d/00-registrar-ip.conf**. The configuration processing reads the files inside the drop-in directory in lexicographic order and sets each option to the last value it reads.

Prerequisites

- You have network access to the systems where the Keylime verifier is installed and running. For more information, see [Section 7.2, “Deploying Keylime verifier from a package”](#).
- You have **root** permissions and network connection to the system or systems on which you want to install Keylime components.
- You have access to the database where Keylime saves data from the registrar. You can use any of the following database management systems:
 - SQLite (default)
 - PostgreSQL
 - MySQL
 - MariaDB
- You have valid keys and certificates from your certificate authority.

Procedure

1. Install the Keylime registrar:

```
# dnf install keylime-registrar
```

2. Define the IP address and port of the registrar by creating a new **.conf** file in the **/etc/keylime/registrar.conf.d/** directory, for example, **/etc/keylime/registrar.conf.d/00-registrar-ip.conf**, with the following content:

```
[registrar]
ip = <registrar_IP_address>
```

- Replace **<registrar_IP_address>** with the registrar's IP address. Alternatively, use **ip = *** or **ip = 0.0.0.0** to bind the registrar to all available IP addresses.
 - Optionally, change the port to which the Keylime agents connect by using the **port** option. The default value is **8890**.
 - Optionally, change the TLS port to which the Keylime verifier and tenant connect by using the **tls_port** option. The default value is **8891**.
3. Optional: Configure the registrar's database for the list of agents. The default configuration uses an SQLite database in the registrar's **/var/lib/keylime/reg_data.sqlite** directory. You can create a new **.conf** file in the **/etc/keylime/registrar.conf.d/** directory, for example, **/etc/keylime/registrar.conf.d/00-db-url.conf**, with the following content:

```
[registrar]
database_url = <protocol>://<name>:<password>@<ip_address_or_hostname>/<properties>
```

Replace **<protocol>://<name>:<password>@<ip_address_or_hostname>/<properties>** with the URL of the database, for example, **postgresql://registrar:EKYYX-bqY2?#raXm@198.51.100.1/registardb**.

Ensure that the credentials you use have the permissions for Keylime to create the database structure.

4. Add certificates and keys to the registrar:
- You can use the default configuration and load the keys and certificates to the **/var/lib/keylime/reg_ca/** directory.
 - Alternatively, you can define the location of the keys and certificates in the configuration. Create a new **.conf** file in the **/etc/keylime/registrar.conf.d/** directory, for example, **/etc/keylime/registrar.conf.d/00-keys-and-certs.conf**, with the following content:

```
[registrar]
tls_dir = /var/lib/keylime/reg_ca
server_key = </path/to/server_key>
server_key_password = <passphrase1>
server_cert = </path/to/server_cert>
trusted_client_ca = ['</path/to/ca/cert1>', '</path/to/ca/cert2>']
```



NOTE

Use absolute paths to define key and certificate locations. Alternatively, you can define a directory in the **tls_dir** option and use paths relative to that directory.

5. Open the ports in firewall:

```
# firewall-cmd --add-port 8890/tcp --add-port 8891/tcp
# firewall-cmd --runtime-to-permanent
```

If you use a different port, replace **8890** or **8891** with the port number defined in the **.conf** file.

6. Start the **keylime_registrar** service:

```
# systemctl enable --now keylime_registrar
```



NOTE

In the default configuration, start the **keylime_verifier** before starting the **keylime_registrar** service because the verifier creates the CA and certificates for the other Keylime components. This order is not necessary when you use custom certificates.

Verification

- Check that the **keylime_registrar** service is active and running:

```
# systemctl status keylime_registrar
• keylime_registrar.service - The Keylime registrar service
  Loaded: loaded (/usr/lib/systemd/system/keylime_registrar.service; disabled; vendor
  preset: disabled)
  Active: active (running) since Wed 2022-11-09 10:10:17 EST; 1min 42s ago
  ...
```

Next steps

- [Section 7.8, “Deploying Keylime tenant from a package”](#)

7.5. DEPLOYING KEYLIME REGISTRAR AS A CONTAINER

The registrar is the Keylime component that contains a database of all agents, and it hosts the public keys of the trusted platform module (TPM) vendors. After the registrar’s HTTPS service accepts TPM public keys, it presents an interface to obtain these public keys for checking quotes. You can configure the Keylime registrar as a container instead of the RPM method, without any binaries or packages on the host. The container deployment provides better isolation, modularity, and reproducibility of Keylime components.

After you start the container, the Keylime registrar is deployed with default configuration files. You can customize the configuration by using one or more of following methods:

- Mounting the host’s directories that contain the configuration files to the container. This is available in all versions of RHEL 9.
- Modifying the environment variables directly on the container. This is available in RHEL 9.3 and later versions. Modifying the environment variables overrides the values from the configuration files.

Prerequisites

- The **podman** package and its dependencies are installed on the system.
- Optional: You have access to a database where Keylime saves data from the registrar. You can use any of the following database management systems:
 - SQLite (default)
 - PostgreSQL

- MySQL
- MariaDB
- You have valid keys and certificates from your certificate authority.

Procedure

1. Optional: Install the **keylime-registrar** package to access the configuration files. You can configure the container without this package, but it might be easier to modify the configuration files provided with the package.

```
# dnf install keylime-registrar
```

2. Bind the registrar to all available IP addresses by creating a new **.conf** file in the **/etc/keylime/registrar.conf.d/** directory, for example, **/etc/keylime/registrar.conf.d/00-registrar-ip.conf**, with the following content:

```
[registrar]
ip = *
```

- Optionally, change the port to which the Keylime agents connect by using the **port** option. The default value is **8890**.
 - Optionally, change the TLS port to which the Keylime tenant connects by using the **tls_port** option. The default value is **8891**.
3. Optional: Configure the registrar's database for the list of agents. The default configuration uses an SQLite database in the registrar's **/var/lib/keylime/reg_data.sqlite** directory. You can create a new **.conf** file in the **/etc/keylime/registrar.conf.d/** directory, for example, **/etc/keylime/registrar.conf.d/00-db-url.conf**, with the following content:

```
[registrar]
database_url = <protocol>://<name>:<password>@<ip_address_or_hostname>/<properties>
```

Replace **<protocol>://<name>:<password>@<ip_address_or_hostname>/<properties>** with the URL of the database, for example, **postgresql://registrar:EKYYX-bqY2?#raXm@198.51.100.1/registardb**.

Ensure that the credentials you use have the permissions for Keylime to create the database structure.

4. Add certificates and keys to the registrar:
 - You can use the default configuration and load the keys and certificates to the **/var/lib/keylime/reg_ca/** directory.
 - Alternatively, you can define the location of the keys and certificates in the configuration. Create a new **.conf** file in the **/etc/keylime/registrar.conf.d/** directory, for example, **/etc/keylime/registrar.conf.d/00-keys-and-certs.conf**, with the following content:

```
[registrar]
tls_dir = /var/lib/keylime/reg_ca
server_key = </path/to/server_key>
```



```
server_cert = </path/to/server_cert>
trusted_client_ca = ['</path/to/ca/cert1>', '</path/to/ca/cert2>']
```



NOTE

Use absolute paths to define key and certificate locations. Alternatively, you can define a directory in the **tls_dir** option and use paths relative to that directory.

5. Open the ports in firewall:

```
# firewall-cmd --add-port 8890/tcp --add-port 8891/tcp
# firewall-cmd --runtime-to-permanent
```

If you use a different port, replace **8890** or **8891** with the port number defined in the **.conf** file.

6. Run the container:

```
$ podman run --name keylime-registrar \
  -p 8890:8890 \
  -p 8891:8891 \
  -v /etc/keylime/registrar.conf.d:/etc/keylime/registrar.conf.d:Z \
  -v /var/lib/keylime/reg_ca:/var/lib/keylime/reg_ca:Z \
  -d \
  -e KEYLIME_REGISTRAR_SERVER_KEY_PASSWORD=<passphrase1> \
  registry.access.redhat.com/rhel9/keylime-registrar
```

- The **-p** option opens the default ports **8890** and **8881** on the host and on the container.
- The **-v** option creates a bind mount for the directory to the container.
 - With the **Z** option, Podman marks the content with a private unshared label. This means only the current container can use the private volume.
- The **-d** option runs the container detached and in the background.
- The option **-e KEYLIME_REGISTRAR_SERVER_KEY_PASSWORD=<passphrase1>** defines the server key passphrase.
- You can override configuration options with environment variables by using the option **-e KEYLIME_REGISTRAR_<ENVIRONMENT_VARIABLE>=<value>**. To modify additional options, insert the **-e** option separately for each environment variable. For a complete list of environment variables and their default values, see [Section 7.12, “Keylime environment variables”](#).

Verification

- Check that the container is running:

```
$ podman ps -a
```

CONTAINER ID	IMAGE	COMMAND	CREATED	STATUS
07d4b4bff1b6	localhost/keylime-registrar:latest	keylime_registrar	12 seconds ago	Up 12 seconds
	0.0.0.0:8881->8881/tcp, 0.0.0.0:8891->8891/tcp	keylime-registrar		

Next steps

- [Section 7.8, “Deploying Keylime tenant from a package”](#) .

Additional resources

- For more information about Keylime components, see [Section 7.1, “How Keylime works”](#).
- For more information about configuring the Keylime registrar, see [Section 7.4, “Deploying Keylime registrar from a package”](#).
- For more information about the **podman run** command, see the **podman-run(1)** man page on your system.

7.6. DEPLOYING A KEYLIME SERVER BY USING RHEL SYSTEM ROLES

You can set up the verifier and registrar, which are the Keylime server components, by using the **keylime_server** RHEL system role. The **keylime_server** role installs and configures both the verifier and registrar components together on each node.

Perform this procedure on the Ansible control node.

For more information about Keylime, see [8.1. How Keylime works](#).

Prerequisites

- [You have prepared the control node and the managed nodes](#)
- You are logged in to the control node as a user who can run playbooks on the managed nodes.
- The account you use to connect to the managed nodes has **sudo** permissions on them.
- The managed nodes or groups of managed nodes on which you want to run this playbook are listed in the Ansible inventory file.

Procedure

1. Create a playbook that defines the required role:
 - a. Create a new YAML file and open it in a text editor, for example:

```
# vi keylime-playbook.yml
```

- b. Insert the following content:

```
---
- name: Manage keylime servers
  hosts: all
  vars:
    keylime_server_verifier_ip: "{{ ansible_host }}"
    keylime_server_registrar_ip: "{{ ansible_host }}"
    keylime_server_verifier_tls_dir: <ver_tls_directory>
    keylime_server_verifier_server_cert: <ver_server_certfile>
    keylime_server_verifier_server_key: <ver_server_key>
    keylime_server_verifier_server_key_passphrase: <ver_server_key_passphrase>
```

```
keylime_server_verifier_trusted_client_ca: <ver_trusted_client_ca_list>
keylime_server_verifier_client_cert: <ver_client_certfile>
keylime_server_verifier_client_key: <ver_client_key>
keylime_server_verifier_client_key_passphrase: <ver_client_key_passphrase>
keylime_server_verifier_trusted_server_ca: <ver_trusted_server_ca_list>
keylime_server_registrar_tls_dir: <reg_tls_directory>
keylime_server_registrar_server_cert: <reg_server_certfile>
keylime_server_registrar_server_key: <reg_server_key>
keylime_server_registrar_server_key_passphrase: <reg_server_key_passphrase>
keylime_server_registrar_trusted_client_ca: <reg_trusted_client_ca_list>
roles:
  - rhel-system-roles.keylime_server
```

You can find out more about the variables in [Variables for the keylime_server RHEL system role](#).

2. Run the playbook:

```
$ ansible-playbook <keylime-playbook.yml>
```

Verification

1. Check that the **keylime_verifier** service is active and running on the managed host:

```
# systemctl status keylime_verifier
● keylime_verifier.service - The Keylime verifier
   Loaded: loaded (/usr/lib/systemd/system/keylime_verifier.service; disabled; vendor preset: disabled)
   Active: active (running) since Wed 2022-11-09 10:10:08 EST; 1min 45s ago
```

2. Check that the **keylime_registrar** service is active and running:

```
# systemctl status keylime_registrar
● keylime_registrar.service - The Keylime registrar service
   Loaded: loaded (/usr/lib/systemd/system/keylime_registrar.service; disabled; vendor preset: disabled)
   Active: active (running) since Wed 2022-11-09 10:10:17 EST; 1min 42s ago
   ...
```

Next steps

[Section 7.8, “Deploying Keylime tenant from a package”](#)

7.7. VARIABLES FOR THE KEYLIME_SERVER RHEL SYSTEM ROLE

When setting up a Keylime server by using the **keylime_server** RHEL system role, you can customize the following variables for registrar and verifier.

List of **keylime_server** RHEL system role variables for configuring the Keylime verifier

keylime_server_verifier_ip

Defines the IP address of the verifier.

keylime_server_verifier_tls_dir

Specifies the directory where the keys and certificates are stored. If set to default, the verifier uses the **/var/lib/keylime/cv_ca** directory.

keylime_server_verifier_server_key_passphrase

Specifies a passphrase to decrypt the server private key. If the value is empty, the private key is not encrypted.

keylime_server_verifier_server_cert: Specifies the Keylime verifier server certificate file.

keylime_server_verifier_trusted_client_ca

Defines the list of trusted client CA certificates. You must store the files in the directory set in the **keylime_server_verifier_tls_dir** option.

keylime_server_verifier_client_key

Defines the file containing the Keylime verifier private client key.

keylime_server_verifier_client_key_passphrase

Defines the passphrase to decrypt the client private key file. If the value is empty, the private key is not encrypted.

keylime_server_verifier_client_cert

Defines the Keylime verifier client certificate file.

keylime_server_verifier_trusted_server_ca

Defines the list of trusted server CA certificates. You must store the files in the directory set in the **keylime_server_verifier_tls_dir** option.

List of registrar variables for setting up **keylime_server** RHEL system role

keylime_server_registrar_ip

Defines the IP address of the registrar.

keylime_server_registrar_tls_dir

Specifies the directory where you store the keys and certificates for the registrar. If you set it to default, the registrar uses the **/var/lib/keylime/reg_ca** directory.

keylime_server_registrar_server_key

Defines the Keylime registrar private server key file.

keylime_server_registrar_server_key_passphrase

Specifies the passphrase to decrypt the server private key of the registrar. If the value is empty, the private key is not encrypted.

keylime_server_registrar_server_cert

Specifies the Keylime registrar server certificate file.

keylime_server_registrar_trusted_client_ca

Defines the list of trusted client CA certificates. You must store the files in the directory set in the **keylime_server_registrar_tls_dir** option.

7.8. DEPLOYING KEYLIME TENANT FROM A PACKAGE

Keylime uses the **keylime_tenant** utility for many functions, including provisioning the agents on the target systems. You can install **keylime_tenant** on any system, including the systems that run other Keylime components, or on a separate system, depending on your requirements.

Prerequisites

- You have **root** permissions and network connection to the system or systems on which you want to install Keylime components.
- You have network access to the systems where the other Keylime components are configured:

Verifier

For more information, see [Section 7.2, “Deploying Keylime verifier from a package”](#).

Registrar

For more information, see [Section 7.4, “Deploying Keylime registrar from a package”](#).

Procedure

1. Install the Keylime tenant:

```
# dnf install keylime-tenant
```

2. Define the tenant’s connection to the Keylime verifier by editing the `/etc/keylime/tenant.conf.d/00-verifier-ip.conf` file:

```
[tenant]
verifier_ip = <verifier_ip>
```

- Replace **<verifier_ip>** with the IP address to the verifier’s system.
 - If the verifier uses a different port than the default value **8881**, add the **verifier_port = <verifier_port>** setting.
3. Define the tenant’s connection to the Keylime registrar by editing the `/etc/keylime/tenant.conf.d/00-registrar-ip.conf` file:
- ```
[tenant]
registrar_ip = <registrar_ip>
```
- Replace **<registrar\_ip>** with the IP address to the registrar’s system.
  - If the registrar uses a different port than the default value **8891**, add the **registrar\_port = <registrar\_port>** setting.
4. Add certificates and keys to the tenant:
    - a. You can use the default configuration and load the keys and certificates to the `/var/lib/keylime/cv_ca` directory.
    - b. Alternatively, you can define the location of the keys and certificates in the configuration. Create a new `.conf` file in the `/etc/keylime/tenant.conf.d/` directory, for example, `/etc/keylime/tenant.conf.d/00-keys-and-certs.conf`, with the following content:

```
[tenant]
tls_dir = /var/lib/keylime/cv_ca
client_key = tenant-key.pem
client_key_password = <passphrase1>
client_cert = tenant-cert.pem
trusted_server_ca = ['</path/to/ca/cert>']
```

The **trusted\_server\_ca** parameter accepts paths to the verifier and registrar server CA certificate. You can provide multiple comma-separated paths, for example if the verifier and registrar use different CAs.



## NOTE

Use absolute paths to define key and certificate locations. Alternatively, you can define a directory in the **tls\_dir** option and use paths relative to that directory.

- Optional: If the trusted platform module (TPM) endorsement key (EK) cannot be verified by using certificates in the **/var/lib/keylime/tpm\_cert\_store** directory, add the certificate to that directory. This can occur particularly when using virtual machines with emulated TPMs.

## Verification

- Check the status of the verifier:

```
keylime_tenant -c cvstatus
Reading configuration from ['/etc/keylime/logging.conf']
2022-10-14 12:56:08.155 - keylime.tpm - INFO - TPM2-TOOLS Version: 5.2
Reading configuration from ['/etc/keylime/tenant.conf']
2022-10-14 12:56:08.157 - keylime.tenant - INFO - Setting up client TLS...
2022-10-14 12:56:08.158 - keylime.tenant - INFO - Using default client_cert option for tenant
2022-10-14 12:56:08.158 - keylime.tenant - INFO - Using default client_key option for tenant
2022-10-14 12:56:08.178 - keylime.tenant - INFO - TLS is enabled.
2022-10-14 12:56:08.178 - keylime.tenant - WARNING - Using default UUID d432fbb3-d2f1-4a97-9ef7-75bd81c00000
2022-10-14 12:56:08.221 - keylime.tenant - INFO - Verifier at 127.0.0.1 with Port 8881 does not have agent d432fbb3-d2f1-4a97-9ef7-75bd81c00000.
```

If correctly set up, and if no agent is configured, the verifier responds that it does not recognize the default agent UUID.

- Check the status of the registrar:

```
keylime_tenant -c regstatus
Reading configuration from ['/etc/keylime/logging.conf']
2022-10-14 12:56:02.114 - keylime.tpm - INFO - TPM2-TOOLS Version: 5.2
Reading configuration from ['/etc/keylime/tenant.conf']
2022-10-14 12:56:02.116 - keylime.tenant - INFO - Setting up client TLS...
2022-10-14 12:56:02.116 - keylime.tenant - INFO - Using default client_cert option for tenant
2022-10-14 12:56:02.116 - keylime.tenant - INFO - Using default client_key option for tenant
2022-10-14 12:56:02.137 - keylime.tenant - INFO - TLS is enabled.
2022-10-14 12:56:02.137 - keylime.tenant - WARNING - Using default UUID d432fbb3-d2f1-4a97-9ef7-75bd81c00000
2022-10-14 12:56:02.171 - keylime.registrar_client - CRITICAL - Error: could not get agent d432fbb3-d2f1-4a97-9ef7-75bd81c00000 data from Registrar Server: 404
2022-10-14 12:56:02.172 - keylime.registrar_client - CRITICAL - Response code 404: agent d432fbb3-d2f1-4a97-9ef7-75bd81c00000 not found
2022-10-14 12:56:02.172 - keylime.tenant - INFO - Agent d432fbb3-d2f1-4a97-9ef7-75bd81c00000 does not exist on the registrar. Please register the agent with the registrar.
2022-10-14 12:56:02.172 - keylime.tenant - INFO - {"code": 404, "status": "Agent d432fbb3-d2f1-4a97-9ef7-75bd81c00000 does not exist on registrar 127.0.0.1 port 8891.", "results": {}}
```

If correctly set up, and if no agent is configured, the registrar responds that it does not recognize the default agent UUID.

### Additional resources

- For additional advanced options for the **keylime\_tenant** utility, enter the **keylime\_tenant -h** command.

## 7.9. DEPLOYING KEYLIME AGENT FROM A PACKAGE

The Keylime agent is the component deployed to all systems to be monitored by Keylime.

By default, the Keylime agent stores all its data in the **/var/lib/keylime/** directory of the monitored system.



### NOTE

To keep the configuration files organized within the drop-in directories, use file names with a two-digit number prefix, for example **/etc/keylime/agent.conf.d/00-registrar-ip.conf**. The configuration processing reads the files inside the drop-in directory in lexicographic order and sets each option to the last value it reads.

### Prerequisites

- You have **root** permissions to the monitored system.
- The monitored system has a Trusted Platform Module (TPM). To verify, enter the **tpm2\_pcrread** command. If the output returns several hashes, a TPM is available.
- You have network access to the systems where the other Keylime components are configured:

#### Verifier

For more information, see [Configuring Keylime verifier](#).

#### Registrar

For more information, see [Configuring Keylime registrar](#).

#### Tenant

For more information, see [Configuring Keylime tenant](#).

- Integrity measurement architecture (IMA) is enabled on the monitored system. For more information, see [Enabling integrity measurement architecture and extended verification module](#).

### Procedure

1. Install the Keylime agent:

```
dnf install keylime-agent
```

This command installs the **keylime-agent-rust** package.

2. Define the agent's IP address and port in the configuration files. Create a new **.conf** file in the **/etc/keylime/agent.conf.d/** directory, for example, **/etc/keylime/agent.conf.d/00-agent-ip.conf**, with the following content:

```
[agent]
ip = '<agent_ip>'
```



## NOTE

The Keylime agent configuration uses the TOML format, which is different from the INI format used for configuration of the other components. Therefore, enter values in valid TOML syntax, for example, paths in single quotation marks and arrays of multiple paths in square brackets.

- Replace **<agent\_IP\_address>** with the agent's IP address. Alternatively, use **ip = '\*'** or **ip = '0.0.0.0'** to bind the agent to all available IP addresses.
  - Optionally, you can also change the agent's port from the default value **9002** by using the **port = '<agent\_port>'** option.
3. Define the registrar's IP address and port in the configuration files. Create a new **.conf** file in the **/etc/keylime/agent.conf.d/** directory, for example, **/etc/keylime/agent.conf.d/00-registrar-ip.conf**, with the following content:

```
[agent]
registrar_ip = '<registrar_IP_address>'
```

- Replace **<registrar\_IP\_address>** with the registrar's IP address.
  - Optionally, you can also change the registrar's port from the default value **8890** by using the **registrar\_port = '<registrar\_port>'** option.
4. Optional: Define the agent's universally unique identifier (UUID). If it is not defined, the default UUID is used. Create a new **.conf** file in the **/etc/keylime/agent.conf.d/** directory, for example, **/etc/keylime/agent.conf.d/00-agent-uuid.conf**, with the following content:

```
[agent]
uuid = '<agent_UUID>'
```

- Replace **<agent\_UUID>** with the agent's UUID, for example **d432fbb3-d2f1-4a97-9ef7-abcdef012345**. You can use the **uuidgen** utility to generate a UUID.
5. Optional: Load existing keys and certificates for the agent. If the agent receives no **server\_key** and **server\_cert**, it generates its own key and a self-signed certificate. Define the location of the keys and certificates in the configuration. Create a new **.conf** file in the **/etc/keylime/agent.conf.d/** directory, for example, **/etc/keylime/agent.conf.d/00-keys-and-certs.conf**, with the following content:

```
[agent]
server_key = '</path/to/server_key>'
server_key_password = '<passphrase1>'
server_cert = '</path/to/server_cert>'
trusted_client_ca = ' [</path/to/ca/cert3>, </path/to/ca/cert4>]'
```



**NOTE**

Use absolute paths to define key and certificate locations. The Keylime agent does not accept relative paths.

6. Open the port in firewall:

```
firewall-cmd --add-port 9002/tcp
firewall-cmd --runtime-to-permanent
```

If you use a different port, replace **9002** with the port number defined in the **.conf** file.

7. Enable and start the **keylime\_agent** service:

```
systemctl enable --now keylime_agent
```

8. Optional: From the system where the Keylime tenant is configured, verify that the agent is correctly configured and can connect to the registrar.

```
keylime_tenant -c regstatus --uuid <agent_uuid>
Reading configuration from ['/etc/keylime/logging.conf']
...
==\n-----END CERTIFICATE-----\n", "ip": "127.0.0.1", "port": 9002, "regcount": 1,
"operational_state": "Registered"]}]}
```

- Replace **<agent\_uuid>** with the agent's UUID.  
If the registrar and agent are correctly configured, the output displays the agent's IP address and port, followed by **"operational\_state": "Registered"**.

9. Create a new IMA policy by entering the following content into the **/etc/ima/ima-policy** file:

```
PROC_SUPER_MAGIC = 0x9fa0
dont_measure fsmagic=0x9fa0
SYSFS_MAGIC = 0x62656572
dont_measure fsmagic=0x62656572
DEBUGFS_MAGIC = 0x64626720
dont_measure fsmagic=0x64626720
TMPFS_MAGIC = 0x01021994
dont_measure fsmagic=0x01021994
RAMFS_MAGIC
dont_measure fsmagic=0x858458f6
DEVPTS_SUPER_MAGIC=0x1cd1
dont_measure fsmagic=0x1cd1
BINFORMATS_MAGIC=0x42494e4d
dont_measure fsmagic=0x42494e4d
SECURITYFS_MAGIC=0x73636673
dont_measure fsmagic=0x73636673
SELINUX_MAGIC=0xf97cff8c
dont_measure fsmagic=0xf97cff8c
SMACK_MAGIC=0x43415d53
dont_measure fsmagic=0x43415d53
NFS_MAGIC=0x6e736673
dont_measure fsmagic=0x6e736673
EFIVARFS_MAGIC
dont_measure fsmagic=0xde5e81e4
```

```
CGROUP_SUPER_MAGIC=0x27e0eb
dont_measure fsmagic=0x27e0eb
CGROUP2_SUPER_MAGIC=0x63677270
dont_measure fsmagic=0x63677270
OVERLAYFS_MAGIC
when containers are used we almost always want to ignore them
dont_measure fsmagic=0x794c7630
MEASUREMENTS
measure func=BPRM_CHECK
measure func=FILE_MMAP mask=MAY_EXEC
measure func=MODULE_CHECK uid=0
```

This policy targets runtime monitoring of executed applications. You can adjust this policy according to your scenario. You can find the MAGIC constants in the **statfs(2)** man page on your system.

10. Update kernel parameters:

```
grubby --update-kernel DEFAULT --args 'ima_appraise=fix ima_canonical_fmt
ima_policy=tcb ima_template=ima-ng'
```

11. Reboot the system to apply the new IMA policy.

## Verification

1. Verify that the agent is running:

```
systemctl status keylime_agent
• keylime_agent.service - The Keylime compute agent
 Loaded: loaded (/usr/lib/systemd/system/keylime_agent.service; enabled; preset:
disabled)
 Active: active (running) since ...
```

## Next steps

After the agent is configured on all systems you want to monitor, you can deploy Keylime to perform one or both of the following functions:

- [Deploying Keylime for runtime monitoring](#)
- [Deploying Keylime for measured boot attestation](#)

## Additional resources

- [Integrity Measurement Architecture \(IMA\) Wiki](#)

## 7.10. CONFIGURING KEYLIME FOR RUNTIME MONITORING

To verify that the state of monitored systems is correct, the Keylime agent must be running on the monitored systems.



## IMPORTANT

Because Keylime runtime monitoring uses integrity measurement architecture (IMA) to measure large numbers of files, it might have a significant impact on the performance of your system.

When provisioning the agent, you can also define a file that Keylime sends to the monitored system. Keylime encrypts the file sent to the agent, and decrypts it only if the agent's system complies with the TPM policy and with the IMA allowlist.

You can make Keylime ignore changes of specific files or within specific directories by configuring a Keylime excludelist. The excluded files are still measured by IMA.

From Keylime version 7.3.0, provided in RHEL 9.3, the allowlist and excludelist are combined into the Keylime runtime policy.

## Prerequisites

- You have network access to the systems where the Keylime components are configured:

### Verifier

For more information, see [Section 7.2, “Deploying Keylime verifier from a package”](#).

### Registrar

For more information, see [Section 7.4, “Deploying Keylime registrar from a package”](#).

### Tenant

For more information, see [Section 7.8, “Deploying Keylime tenant from a package”](#).

### Agent

For more information, see [Section 7.9, “Deploying Keylime agent from a package”](#).

## Procedure

1. On the monitored system where the Keylime agent is configured and running, install the **python3-keylime** package, which contains the **keylime-policy** tool:

```
dnf -y install python3-keylime
```

2. Create a runtime policy from the current state of the agent system:

```
keylime-policy create runtime --ima-measurement --rootfs '/' --ramdisk-dir '/boot' --output
<policy.json>
```

In this command,

- Replace **<policy.json>** with the file name of the runtime policy.
- The following directories are automatically excluded from measurement:
  - **/sys**
  - **/run**
  - **/proc**

- **/lost+found**
  - **/dev**
  - **/media**
  - **/snap**
  - **/mnt**
  - **/var**
  - **/tmp**
- Optionally, you can exclude additional specific paths from measurement by adding a **--excludelist <excludelist.txt>** option. The excludelist accepts Python regular expressions with one regular expression per line. See [Regular expression operations at docs.python.org](https://docs.python.org/3/library/re.html) for the complete list of special characters.
3. Copy the generated runtime policy to the system where the **keylime\_tenant** utility is configured, for example:

```
scp <policy.json> root@<tenant.ip>:/root/<policy.json>
```

4. On the system where the Keylime tenant is configured, provision the agent by using the **keylime\_tenant** utility:

```
keylime_tenant --command add --targethost <agent_ip> --uuid <agent_uuid> --runtime-policy <policy.json> --cert default
```

- Replace **<agent\_ip>** with the agent's IP address.
- Replace **<agent\_uuid>** with the agent's UUID.
- Replace **<policy.json>** with the path to the Keylime runtime policy file.
- With the **--cert** option, the tenant generates and signs a certificate for the agent by using the CA certificates and keys located in the specified directory, or the default **/var/lib/keylime/ca/** directory. If the directory contains no CA certificates and keys, the tenant will generate them automatically according to the configuration in the **/etc/keylime/ca.conf** file and save them to the specified directory. The tenant then sends these keys and certificates to the agent.

When generating CA certificates or signing agent certificates, you might be prompted for the password to access the CA private key: **Please enter the password to decrypt your keystore:**.



#### NOTE

Keylime encrypts the file sent to the agent, and decrypts it only if the agent's system complies with the TPM policy and the IMA allowlist. By default, Keylime decompresses sent **.zip** files.

As an example, with the following command, **keylime\_tenant** provisions a new Keylime agent at **127.0.0.1** with UUID **d432fbb3-d2f1-4a97-9ef7-75bd81c00000** and loads a runtime policy **policy.json**. It also generates a certificate in the default directory and sends the certificate file

to the agent. Keylime decrypts the file only if the TPM policy configured in **/etc/keylime/verifier.conf** is satisfied:

```
keylime_tenant --command add --targethost 127.0.0.1 --uuid d432fbb3-d2f1-4a97-9ef7-75bd81c00000 --runtime-policy policy.json --cert default
```



## NOTE

You can stop Keylime from monitoring a node by using the **# keylime\_tenant --command delete --uuid <agent\_uuid>** command.

You can modify the configuration of an already registered agent by using the **keylime\_tenant --command update** command.

## Verification

1. Optional: Reboot the monitored system to verify that the settings are persistent.
2. Verify a successful attestation of the agent:

```
keylime_tenant --command cvstatus --uuid <agent.uuid>
...
{"<agent.uuid>": {"operational_state": "Get Quote"... "attestation_count": 5
...

```

Replace **<agent.uuid>** with the agent's UUID.

If the value of **operational\_state** is **Get Quote** and **attestation\_count** is nonzero, the attestation of this agent is successful.

If the value of **operational\_state** is **Invalid Quote** or **Failed** attestation fails, the command displays output similar to the following:

```
{"<agent.uuid>": {"operational_state": "Invalid Quote", ... "ima.validation.ima-
ng.not_in_allowlist", "attestation_count": 5, "last_received_quote": 1684150329,
"last_successful_attestation": 1684150327}}
```

3. If the attestation fails, display more details in the verifier log:

```
journalctl --unit keylime_verifier
keylime.tpm - INFO - Checking IMA measurement list...
keylime.ima - WARNING - File not found in allowlist: /root/bad-script.sh
keylime.ima - ERROR - IMA ERRORS: template-hash 0 fnf 1 hash 0 good 781
keylime.cloudverifier - WARNING - agent D432FBB3-D2F1-4A97-9EF7-75BD81C00000
failed, stopping polling
```

## Additional resources

- For more information about IMA, see [Enhancing security with the kernel integrity subsystem](#).

## 7.11. CONFIGURING KEYLIME FOR MEASURED BOOT ATTESTATION

When you configure Keylime for measured boot attestation, Keylime checks that the boot process on the measured system corresponds to the state you defined.

## Prerequisites

- You have network access to the systems where the Keylime components are configured:

### Verifier

For more information, see [Section 7.2, “Deploying Keylime verifier from a package”](#).

### Registrar

For more information, see [Section 7.4, “Deploying Keylime registrar from a package”](#).

### Tenant

For more information, see [Section 7.8, “Deploying Keylime tenant from a package”](#).

### Agent

For more information, see [Section 7.9, “Deploying Keylime agent from a package”](#).

- Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI) is enabled on the agent system.

## Procedure

- On the monitored system where the Keylime agent is configured and running, install the **python3-keylime** package, which contains the **keylime-policy** tool:

```
dnf -y install python3-keylime
```

- On the monitored system, generate a policy from the measured boot log of the current state of the system by using the **keylime-policy** tool:

```
keylime-policy create measured-boot --eventlog-file
/sys/kernel/security/tpm0/binary_bios_measurements --output
<./measured_boot_reference_state.json>
```

- Replace **<./measured\_boot\_reference\_state.json>** with the path where **keylime-policy** saves the generated policy.
- If your UEFI system does not have Secure Boot enabled, pass the **--without-secureboot** argument.



### IMPORTANT

The policy generated with **keylime-policy** is based on the current state of the system and is very strict. Any modifications of the system including kernel updates and system updates will change the boot process and the system will fail the attestation.

- Copy the generated policy to the system where the **keylime\_tenant** utility is configured, for example:

```
scp root@<agent_ip>:<./measured_boot_reference_state.json>
<./measured_boot_reference_state.json>
```

- On the system where the Keylime tenant is configured, provision the agent by using the **keylime\_tenant** utility:

```
keylime_tenant --command add --targethost <agent_ip> --uuid <agent_uuid> --mb_refstate
<./measured_boot_reference_state.json> --cert default
```

- Replace **<agent\_ip>** with the agent's IP address.
- Replace **<agent\_uuid>** with the agent's UUID.
- Replace **<./measured\_boot\_reference\_state.json>** with the path to the measured boot policy.

If you configure measured boot in combination with runtime monitoring, provide all the options from both use cases when entering the **keylime\_tenant --command add** command.



#### NOTE

You can stop Keylime from monitoring a node by using the **# keylime\_tenant --command delete --targethost <agent\_ip> --uuid <agent\_uuid>** command.

You can modify the configuration of an already registered agent by using the **keylime\_tenant --command update** command.

### Verification

- Reboot the monitored system and verify a successful attestation of the agent:

```
keylime_tenant --command cvstatus --uuid <agent_uuid>
...
{"<agent.uuid>": {"operational_state": "Get Quote"... "attestation_count": 5
...

```

Replace **<agent\_uuid>** with the agent's UUID.

If the value of **operational\_state** is **Get Quote** and **attestation\_count** is nonzero, the attestation of this agent is successful.

If the value of **operational\_state** is **Invalid Quote** or **Failed** attestation fails, the command displays output similar to the following:

```
{"<agent.uuid>": {"operational_state": "Invalid Quote", ... "ima.validation.ima-
ng.not_in_allowlist", "attestation_count": 5, "last_received_quote": 1684150329,
"last_successful_attestation": 1684150327}}
```

- If the attestation fails, display more details in the verifier log:

```
journalctl -u keylime_verifier
{"d432fbb3-d2f1-4a97-9ef7-75bd81c00000": {"operational_state": "Tenant Quote Failed", ...
"last_event_id": "measured_boot.invalid_pcr_0", "attestation_count": 0,
"last_received_quote": 1684487093, "last_successful_attestation": 0}}
```

## 7.12. KEYLIME ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

You can set Keylime environment variables to override the values from the configuration files, for example, when starting a container with the **podman run** command by using the **-e** option.

The environment variables have the following syntax:

```
KEYLIME_<SECTION>_<ENVIRONMENT_VARIABLE>=<value>
```

Where:

- **<SECTION>** is the section of the Keylime configuration file.
- **<ENVIRONMENT\_VARIABLE>** is the environment variable.
- **<value>** is the value to which you want to set the environment variable.

For example, **-e KEYLIME\_VERIFIER\_MAX\_RETRIES=6** sets the **max\_retries** configuration option in the **[verifier]** section to **6**.

## Verifier configuration

Table 7.1. **[verifier]** section

| Configuration option              | Environment variable                               | Default value  |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| <b>auto_migrate_db</b>            | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_AUTO_MIGRATE_DB</b>            | <b>True</b>    |
| <b>client_cert</b>                | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_CLIENT_CERT</b>                | <b>default</b> |
| <b>client_key_password</b>        | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_CLIENT_KEY_PASSWORD</b>        |                |
| <b>client_key</b>                 | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_CLIENT_KEY</b>                 | <b>default</b> |
| <b>database_pool_sz_ovfl</b>      | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_DATABASE_POOL_SZ_OVFL</b>      | <b>5,10</b>    |
| <b>database_url</b>               | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_DATABASE_URL</b>               | <b>sqlite</b>  |
| <b>durable_attestation_import</b> | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_DURABLE_ATTESTATION_IMPORT</b> |                |
| <b>enable_agent_mtls</b>          | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_ENABLE_AGENT_MTLS</b>          | <b>True</b>    |
| <b>exponential_backoff</b>        | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_EXPONENTIAL_BACKOFF</b>        | <b>True</b>    |



| Configuration option             | Environment variable                              | Default value     |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>ignore_tomtpou_errors</b>     | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_IGNORE_TOMTOU_ERRORS</b>      | <b>False</b>      |
| <b>ip</b>                        | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_IP</b>                        | <b>127.0.0.1</b>  |
| <b>max_retries</b>               | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_MAX_RETRIES</b>               | <b>5</b>          |
| <b>max_upload_size</b>           | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_MAX_UPLOAD_SIZE</b>           | <b>104857600</b>  |
| <b>measured_boot_evaluate</b>    | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_MEASURED_BOOT_EVALUATE</b>    | <b>once</b>       |
| <b>measured_boot_imports</b>     | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_MEASURED_BOOT_IMPORTS</b>     | <b>[]</b>         |
| <b>measured_boot_policy_name</b> | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_MEASURED_BOOT_POLICY_NAME</b> | <b>accept-all</b> |
| <b>num_workers</b>               | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_NUM_WORKERS</b>               | <b>0</b>          |
| <b>persistent_store_encoding</b> | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_PERSISTENT_STORE_ENCODING</b> |                   |
| <b>persistent_store_format</b>   | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_PERSISTENT_STORE_FORMAT</b>   | <b>json</b>       |
| <b>persistent_store_url</b>      | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_PERSISTENT_STORE_URL</b>      |                   |
| <b>port</b>                      | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_PORT</b>                      | <b>8881</b>       |
| <b>quote_interval</b>            | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_QUOTE_INTERVAL</b>            | <b>2</b>          |
| <b>registrar_ip</b>              | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_REGISTRAR_IP</b>              | <b>127.0.0.1</b>  |
| <b>registrar_port</b>            | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_REGISTRAR_PORT</b>            | <b>8891</b>       |
| <b>request_timeout</b>           | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_REQUEST_TIMEOUT</b>           | <b>60.0</b>       |

| Configuration option                   | Environment variable                                   | Default value                                                                   |
|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>require_allow_list_signatures</b>   | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_REQUIRE_ALLOW_LIST_SIGNATURES</b>  | <b>True</b>                                                                     |
| <b>retry_interval</b>                  | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_RETRY_INTERVAL</b>                 | <b>2</b>                                                                        |
| <b>server_cert</b>                     | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_SERVER_CERT</b>                    | <b>default</b>                                                                  |
| <b>server_key_password</b>             | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_SERVER_KEY_PASSWORD</b>            | <b>default</b>                                                                  |
| <b>server_key</b>                      | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_SERVER_KEY</b>                     | <b>default</b>                                                                  |
| <b>severity_labels</b>                 | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_SEVERITY_LABELS</b>                | <b>["info", "notice", "warning", "error", "critical", "alert", "emergency"]</b> |
| <b>severity_policy</b>                 | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_SEVERITY_POLICY</b>                | <b>[{"event_id": ".*", "severity_label": "emergency"}]</b>                      |
| <b>signed_attributes</b>               | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_SIGNED_ATTRIBUTES</b>              |                                                                                 |
| <b>time_stamp_authority_certs_path</b> | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_TIMESTAMP_AUTHORITY_CERTS_PATH</b> |                                                                                 |
| <b>time_stamp_authority_url</b>        | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_TIMESTAMP_AUTHORITY_URL</b>        |                                                                                 |
| <b>tls_dir</b>                         | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_TLS_DIR</b>                        | <b>generate</b>                                                                 |
| <b>transparency_log_sign_algo</b>      | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_TRANSPARENCY_LOG_SIGN_ALGO</b>     | <b>sha256</b>                                                                   |
| <b>transparency_log_url</b>            | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_TRANSPARENCY_LOG_URL</b>           |                                                                                 |
| <b>trusted_client_ca</b>               | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_TRUSTED_CLIENT_CA</b>              | <b>default</b>                                                                  |

| Configuration option     | Environment variable                      | Default value  |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------|----------------|
| <b>trusted_server_ca</b> | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_TRUSTED_SERVER_CA</b> | <b>default</b> |
| <b>uuid</b>              | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_UUID</b>              | <b>default</b> |
| <b>version</b>           | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_VERSION</b>           | <b>2.0</b>     |

Table 7.2. [revocations] section

| Configuration option                    | Environment variable                                                 | Default value  |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| <b>enabled_revocation_notifications</b> | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_REVOCATIONS_ENABLED_REVOCATION_NOTIFICATIONS</b> | <b>[agent]</b> |
| <b>webhook_url</b>                      | <b>KEYLIME_VERIFIER_REVOCATIONS_WEBHOOK_URL</b>                      |                |

## Registrar configuration

Table 7.3. [registrar] section

| Configuration option              | Environment variable                                | Default value    |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| <b>auto_migrate_db</b>            | <b>KEYLIME_REGISTRAR_AUTO_MIGRATE_DB</b>            | <b>True</b>      |
| <b>database_pool_sz_ovfl</b>      | <b>KEYLIME_REGISTRAR_DATABASE_POOL_SZ_OVFL</b>      | <b>5,10</b>      |
| <b>database_url</b>               | <b>KEYLIME_REGISTRAR_DATABASE_URL</b>               | <b>sqlite</b>    |
| <b>durable_attestation_import</b> | <b>KEYLIME_REGISTRAR_DURABLE_ATTESTATION_IMPORT</b> |                  |
| <b>ip</b>                         | <b>KEYLIME_REGISTRAR_IP</b>                         | <b>127.0.0.1</b> |
| <b>persistent_store_encoding</b>  | <b>KEYLIME_REGISTRAR_PERSISTENT_STORE_ENCODING</b>  |                  |
| <b>persistent_store_format</b>    | <b>KEYLIME_REGISTRAR_PERSISTENT_STORE_FORMAT</b>    | <b>json</b>      |

|                                        |                                                          |                                 |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>persistent_store_url</b>            | <b>KEYLIME_REGISTRAR_PERSISTENT_STORE_URL</b>            |                                 |
| <b>port</b>                            | <b>KEYLIME_REGISTRAR_PORT</b>                            | <b>8890</b>                     |
| <b>prov_db_filename</b>                | <b>KEYLIME_REGISTRAR_PROVIDER_DB_FILENAME</b>            | <b>provider_reg_data.sqlite</b> |
| <b>server_cert</b>                     | <b>KEYLIME_REGISTRAR_SERVER_CERT</b>                     | <b>default</b>                  |
| <b>server_key_password</b>             | <b>KEYLIME_REGISTRAR_SERVER_KEY_PASSWORD</b>             | <b>default</b>                  |
| <b>server_key</b>                      | <b>KEYLIME_REGISTRAR_SERVER_KEY</b>                      | <b>default</b>                  |
| <b>signed_attributes</b>               | <b>KEYLIME_REGISTRAR_SIGNED_ATTRIBUTES</b>               | <b>ek_tpm,aik_tpm,ekcert</b>    |
| <b>time_stamp_authority_certs_path</b> | <b>KEYLIME_REGISTRAR_TIME_STAMP_AUTHORITY_CERTS_PATH</b> |                                 |
| <b>time_stamp_authority_url</b>        | <b>KEYLIME_REGISTRAR_TIME_STAMP_AUTHORITY_URL</b>        |                                 |
| <b>tls_dir</b>                         | <b>KEYLIME_REGISTRAR_TLS_DIR</b>                         | <b>default</b>                  |
| <b>tls_port</b>                        | <b>KEYLIME_REGISTRAR_TLS_PORT</b>                        | <b>8891</b>                     |
| <b>transparency_log_sign_algo</b>      | <b>KEYLIME_REGISTRAR_TRANSPARENCY_LOG_SIGN_ALGO</b>      | <b>sha256</b>                   |
| <b>transparency_log_url</b>            | <b>KEYLIME_REGISTRAR_TRANSPARENCY_LOG_URL</b>            |                                 |
| <b>trusted_client_ca</b>               | <b>KEYLIME_REGISTRAR_TRUSTED_CLIENT_CA</b>               | <b>default</b>                  |
| <b>version</b>                         | <b>KEYLIME_REGISTRAR_VERSION</b>                         | <b>2.0</b>                      |

Tenant configuration

Table 7.4. [tenant] section

| Configuration option              | Environment variable                             | Default value                 |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>accept_tpm_encryption_algs</b> | <b>KEYLIME_TENANT_ACCEPT_TPM_ENCRYPTION_ALGS</b> | <b>ecc, rsa</b>               |
| <b>accept_tpm_hash_algs</b>       | <b>KEYLIME_TENANT_ACCEPT_TPM_HASH_ALGS</b>       | <b>sha512, sha384, sha256</b> |
| <b>accept_tpm_signing_algs</b>    | <b>KEYLIME_TENANT_ACCEPT_TPM_SIGNING_ALGS</b>    | <b>ecschnorr, rsassa</b>      |
| <b>client_cert</b>                | <b>KEYLIME_TENANT_CLIENT_CERT</b>                | <b>default</b>                |
| <b>client_key_password</b>        | <b>KEYLIME_TENANT_CLIENT_KEY_PASSWORD</b>        |                               |
| <b>client_key</b>                 | <b>KEYLIME_TENANT_CLIENT_KEY</b>                 | <b>default</b>                |
| <b>ek_check_script</b>            | <b>KEYLIME_TENANT_EK_CHECK_SCRIPT</b>            |                               |
| <b>enable_agent_mtls</b>          | <b>KEYLIME_TENANT_ENABLE_AGENT_MTLS</b>          | <b>True</b>                   |
| <b>exponential_backoff</b>        | <b>KEYLIME_TENANT_EXPONENTIAL_BACKOFF</b>        | <b>True</b>                   |
| <b>max_payload_size</b>           | <b>KEYLIME_TENANT_MAX_PAYLOAD_SIZE</b>           | <b>1048576</b>                |
| <b>max_retries</b>                | <b>KEYLIME_TENANT_MAX_RETRIES</b>                | <b>5</b>                      |
| <b>mb_refstate</b>                | <b>KEYLIME_TENANT_MB_REFSTATE</b>                |                               |
| <b>registrar_ip</b>               | <b>KEYLIME_TENANT_REGISTRAR_IP</b>               | <b>127.0.0.1</b>              |
| <b>registrar_port</b>             | <b>KEYLIME_TENANT_REGISTRAR_PORT</b>             | <b>8891</b>                   |
| <b>request_timeout</b>            | <b>KEYLIME_TENANT_REQUEST_TIMEOUT</b>            | <b>60</b>                     |

|                          |                                         |                                        |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <b>require_ek_cert</b>   | <b>KEYLIME_TENANT_REQUIRE_EK_CERT</b>   | <b>True</b>                            |
| <b>retry_interval</b>    | <b>KEYLIME_TENANT_RETRY_INTERVAL</b>    | <b>2</b>                               |
| <b>tls_dir</b>           | <b>KEYLIME_TENANT_TLS_DIR</b>           | <b>default</b>                         |
| <b>tpm_cert_store</b>    | <b>KEYLIME_TENANT_TPM_CERT_STORE</b>    | <b>/var/lib/keylime/tpm_cert_store</b> |
| <b>trusted_server_ca</b> | <b>KEYLIME_TENANT_TRUSTED_SERVER_CA</b> | <b>default</b>                         |
| <b>verifier_ip</b>       | <b>KEYLIME_TENANT_VERIFIER_IP</b>       | <b>127.0.0.1</b>                       |
| <b>verifier_port</b>     | <b>KEYLIME_TENANT_VERIFIER_PORT</b>     | <b>8881</b>                            |
| <b>version</b>           | <b>KEYLIME_TENANT_VERSION</b>           | <b>2.0</b>                             |

## CA configuration

Table 7.5. [ca] section

| Configuration option    | Environment variable               | Default value                        |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <b>cert_bits</b>        | <b>KEYLIME_CA_CERT_BITS</b>        | <b>2048</b>                          |
| <b>cert_ca_lifetime</b> | <b>KEYLIME_CA_CERT_CA_LIFETIME</b> | <b>3650</b>                          |
| <b>cert_ca_name</b>     | <b>KEYLIME_CA_CERT_CA_NAME</b>     | <b>Keylime Certificate Authority</b> |
| <b>cert_country</b>     | <b>KEYLIME_CA_CERT_COUNTRY</b>     | <b>US</b>                            |
| <b>cert_crl_dist</b>    | <b>KEYLIME_CA_CERT_CRL_DIST</b>    | <b>http://localhost:38080/crl</b>    |
| <b>cert_lifetime</b>    | <b>KEYLIME_CA_CERT_LIFETIME</b>    | <b>365</b>                           |
| <b>cert_locality</b>    | <b>KEYLIME_CA_CERT_LOCALITY</b>    | <b>Lexington</b>                     |

|                          |                                     |                |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------|
| <b>cert_org_unit</b>     | <b>KEYLIME_CA_CERT_ORG_UNIT</b>     | <b>53</b>      |
| <b>cert_organization</b> | <b>KEYLIME_CA_CERT_ORGANIZATION</b> | <b>MITLL</b>   |
| <b>cert_state</b>        | <b>KEYLIME_CA_CERT_STATE</b>        | <b>MA</b>      |
| <b>password</b>          | <b>KEYLIME_CA_PASSWORD</b>          | <b>default</b> |
| <b>version</b>           | <b>KEYLIME_CA_VERSION</b>           | <b>2.0</b>     |

## Agent configuration

Table 7.6. [agent] section

| Configuration option                   | Environment variable                                 | Default value            |
|----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>contact_ip</b>                      | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_CONTACT_IP</b>                      | <b>127.0.0.1</b>         |
| <b>contact_port</b>                    | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_CONTACT_PORT</b>                    | <b>9002</b>              |
| <b>dec_payload_file</b>                | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_DEC_PAYLOAD_FILE</b>                | <b>decrypted_payload</b> |
| <b>ek_handle</b>                       | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_EK_HANDLE</b>                       | <b>generate</b>          |
| <b>enable_agent_mtls</b>               | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_ENABLE_AGENT_MTLS</b>               | <b>true</b>              |
| <b>enable_insecure_payload</b>         | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_ENABLE_INSECURE_PAYLOAD</b>         | <b>false</b>             |
| <b>enable_revocation_notifications</b> | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_ENABLE_REVOCATION_NOTIFICATIONS</b> | <b>true</b>              |
| <b>enc_keyname</b>                     | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_ENC_KEYNAME</b>                     | <b>derived_tci_key</b>   |
| <b>exponential_backoff</b>             | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_EXPONENTIAL_BACKOFF</b>             | <b>true</b>              |

| Configuration option                | Environment variable                              | Default value      |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>extract_payload_zip</b>          | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_EXTRACT_PAYLOAD_ZIP</b>          | <b>true</b>        |
| <b>ip</b>                           | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_IP</b>                           | <b>127.0.0.1</b>   |
| <b>max_retries</b>                  | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_MAX_RETRIES</b>                  | <b>4</b>           |
| <b>measure_payload_pcr</b>          | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_MEASURE_PAYLOAD_PCR</b>          | <b>-1</b>          |
| <b>payload_script</b>               | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_PAYLOAD_SCRIPT</b>               | <b>autorun.sh</b>  |
| <b>port</b>                         | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_PORT</b>                         | <b>9002</b>        |
| <b>registrar_ip</b>                 | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_REGISTRAR_IP</b>                 | <b>127.0.0.1</b>   |
| <b>registrar_port</b>               | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_REGISTRAR_PORT</b>               | <b>8890</b>        |
| <b>retry_interval</b>               | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_RETRY_INTERVAL</b>               | <b>2</b>           |
| <b>revocation_actions</b>           | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_REVOCATION_ACTIONS</b>           | <b>[]</b>          |
| <b>revocation_cert</b>              | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_REVOCATION_CERT</b>              | <b>default</b>     |
| <b>revocation_notification_ip</b>   | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_REVOCATION_NOTIFICATION_IP</b>   | <b>127.0.0.1</b>   |
| <b>revocation_notification_port</b> | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_REVOCATION_NOTIFICATION_PORT</b> | <b>8992</b>        |
| <b>run_as</b>                       | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_RUN_AS</b>                       | <b>keylime:tss</b> |
| <b>secure_size</b>                  | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_SECURE_SIZE</b>                  | <b>1m</b>          |
| <b>server_cert</b>                  | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_SERVER_CERT</b>                  | <b>default</b>     |
| <b>server_key_password</b>          | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_SERVER_KEY_PASSWORD</b>          |                    |



| Configuration option      | Environment variable                    | Default value                               |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <b>server_key</b>         | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_SERVER_KEY</b>         | <b>default</b>                              |
| <b>tls_dir</b>            | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_TLS_DIR</b>            | <b>default</b>                              |
| <b>tpm_encryption_alg</b> | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_TPM_ENCRYPTION_ALG</b> | <b>rsa</b>                                  |
| <b>tpm_hash_alg</b>       | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_TPM_HASH_ALG</b>       | <b>sha256</b>                               |
| <b>tpm_ownerpassword</b>  | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_TPM_OWNERPASSWORD</b>  |                                             |
| <b>tpm_signing_alg</b>    | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_TPM_SIGNING_ALG</b>    | <b>rsassa</b>                               |
| <b>trusted_client_ca</b>  | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_TRUSTED_CLIENT_CA</b>  | <b>default</b>                              |
| <b>uuid</b>               | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_UUID</b>               | <b>d432fbb3-d2f1-4a97-9ef7-75bd81c00000</b> |
| <b>version</b>            | <b>KEYLIME_AGENT_VERSION</b>            | <b>2.0</b>                                  |

## Logging configuration

Table 7.7. **[logging]** section

| Configuration option | Environment variable           | Default value |
|----------------------|--------------------------------|---------------|
| <b>version</b>       | <b>KEYLIME_LOGGING_VERSION</b> | <b>2.0</b>    |

Table 7.8. **[loggers]** section

| Configuration option | Environment variable                | Default value       |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>keys</b>          | <b>KEYLIME_LOGGING_LOGGERS_KEYS</b> | <b>root,keylime</b> |

Table 7.9. **[handlers]** section

| Configuration option | Environment variable | Default value |
|----------------------|----------------------|---------------|
|----------------------|----------------------|---------------|

|             |                                      |                       |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>keys</b> | <b>KEYLIME_LOGGING_HANDLERS_KEYS</b> | <b>consoleHandler</b> |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|

Table 7.10. [formatters] section

|                      |                                        |                  |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------|------------------|
| Configuration option | Environment variable                   | Default value    |
| <b>keys</b>          | <b>KEYLIME_LOGGING_FORMATTERS_KEYS</b> | <b>formatter</b> |

Table 7.11. [formatter\_formatter] section

|                      |                                           |                                                                         |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Configuration option | Environment variable                      | Default value                                                           |
| <b>datefmt</b>       | <b>KEYLIME_LOGGING_FORMATTER_DATE_FMT</b> | <b>%Y-%m-%d %H:%M:%S</b>                                                |
| <b>format</b>        | <b>KEYLIME_LOGGING_FORMATTER_FORMAT</b>   | <b>%(asctime)s.%(msecs)03d - %(name)s - %(levelname)s - %(message)s</b> |

Table 7.12. [logger\_root] section

|                      |                                             |                       |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Configuration option | Environment variable                        | Default value         |
| <b>handlers</b>      | <b>KEYLIME_LOGGING_LOGGER_ROOT_HANDLERS</b> | <b>consoleHandler</b> |
| <b>level</b>         | <b>KEYLIME_LOGGING_LOGGER_ROOT_LEVEL</b>    | <b>INFO</b>           |

Table 7.13. [handler\_consoleHandler] section

|                      |                                                     |                      |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| Configuration option | Environment variable                                | Default value        |
| <b>args</b>          | <b>KEYLIME_LOGGING_HANDLER_CONSOLEHANDLER_ARGS</b>  | <b>(sys.stdout,)</b> |
| <b>class</b>         | <b>KEYLIME_LOGGING_HANDLER_CONSOLEHANDLER_CLASS</b> | <b>StreamHandler</b> |

|                  |                                                         |                  |
|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| <b>formatter</b> | <b>KEYLIME_LOGGING_HANDLER_CONSOLEHANDLER_FORMATTER</b> | <b>formatter</b> |
| <b>level</b>     | <b>KEYLIME_LOGGING_HANDLER_CONSOLEHANDLER_LEVEL</b>     | <b>INFO</b>      |

Table 7.14. **[logger\_keylime]** section

| Configuration option | Environment variable                           | Default value  |
|----------------------|------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| <b>handlers</b>      | <b>KEYLIME_LOGGING_LOGGER_KEYLIME_HANDLERS</b> |                |
| <b>level</b>         | <b>KEYLIME_LOGGING_LOGGER_KEYLIME_LEVEL</b>    | <b>INFO</b>    |
| <b>qualname</b>      | <b>KEYLIME_LOGGING_LOGGER_KEYLIME_QUALNAME</b> | <b>keylime</b> |

## CHAPTER 8. CHECKING INTEGRITY WITH AIDE

Advanced Intrusion Detection Environment (AIDE) is a utility that creates a database of files on the system, and then uses that database to ensure file integrity and detect system intrusions.

### 8.1. INSTALLING AIDE

To start file-integrity checking with AIDE, you must install the corresponding package and initiate the AIDE database.

#### Prerequisites

- The **AppStream** repository is enabled.

#### Procedure

1. Install the **aide** package:

```
dnf install aide
```

2. Generate an initial database:

```
aide --init
Start timestamp: 2024-07-08 10:39:23 -0400 (AIDE 0.16)
AIDE initialized database at /var/lib/aide/aide.db.new.gz

Number of entries: 55856

The attributes of the (uncompressed) database(s):

/var/lib/aide/aide.db.new.gz
...
SHA512 : mZaWoGzL2m6ZcyyZ/AXTlowliEXWSZqx
 IFYImY4f7id4u+Bq8WeuSE2jasZur/A4
 FPBFaBkoCFHdoE/FW/V94Q==
```

3. Optional: In the default configuration, the **aide --init** command checks just a set of directories and files defined in the **/etc/aide.conf** file. To include additional directories or files in the AIDE database, and to change their watched parameters, edit **/etc/aide.conf** accordingly.
4. To start using the database, remove the **.new** substring from the initial database file name:

```
mv /var/lib/aide/aide.db.new.gz /var/lib/aide/aide.db.gz
```

5. Optional: To change the location of the AIDE database, edit the **/etc/aide.conf** file and modify the **DBDIR** value. For additional security, store the database, configuration, and the **/usr/sbin/aide** binary file in a secure location such as a read-only media.

### 8.2. PERFORMING INTEGRITY CHECKS WITH AIDE

You can use the **crond** service to schedule regular file-integrity checks with AIDE.

## Prerequisites

- AIDE is properly installed and its database is initialized. See [Installing AIDE](#)

## Procedure

1. To initiate a manual check:

```
aide --check
Start timestamp: 2024-07-08 10:43:46 -0400 (AIDE 0.16)
AIDE found differences between database and filesystem!!

Summary:
Total number of entries: 55856
Added entries: 0
Removed entries: 0
Changed entries: 1

Changed entries:

fS : /root/.viminfo

Detailed information about changes:

File: /root/.viminfo
SELinux : system_u:object_r:admin_home_t:s | unconfined_u:object_r:admin_home
 0 | _t:s0
...
```

2. At a minimum, configure the system to run AIDE weekly. Optimally, run AIDE daily. For example, to schedule a daily execution of AIDE at 04:05 a.m. by using the **cron** command, add the following line to the **/etc/crontab** file:

```
05 4 * * * root /usr/sbin/aide --check
```

## Additional resources

- **cron(8)** man page on your system

## 8.3. UPDATING AN AIDE DATABASE

After verifying the changes of your system, such as package updates or configuration files adjustments, update also your baseline AIDE database.

## Prerequisites

- AIDE is properly installed and its database is initialized. See [Installing AIDE](#)

## Procedure

1. Update your baseline AIDE database:

```
aide --update
```

The **aide --update** command creates the **/var/lib/aide/aide.db.new.gz** database file.

2. To start using the updated database for integrity checks, remove the **.new** substring from the file name.

### 8.4. FILE-INTEGRITY TOOLS: AIDE AND IMA

Red Hat Enterprise Linux provides several tools for checking and preserving the integrity of files and directories on your system. The following table helps you decide which tool better fits your scenario.

Table 8.1. Comparison between AIDE and IMA

| Question  | Advanced Intrusion Detection Environment (AIDE)                                                                                                                    | Integrity Measurement Architecture (IMA)                                                                                       |
|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| What      | AIDE is a utility that creates a database of files and directories on the system. This database serves for checking file integrity and detect intrusion detection. | IMA detects if a file is altered by checking file measurement (hash values) compared to previously stored extended attributes. |
| How       | AIDE uses rules to compare the integrity state of the files and directories.                                                                                       | IMA uses file hash values to detect the intrusion.                                                                             |
| Why       | Detection - AIDE detects if a file is modified by verifying the rules.                                                                                             | Detection and Prevention - IMA detects and prevents an attack by replacing the extended attribute of a file.                   |
| Usage     | AIDE detects a threat when the file or directory is modified.                                                                                                      | IMA detects a threat when someone tries to alter the entire file.                                                              |
| Extension | AIDE checks the integrity of files and directories on the local system.                                                                                            | IMA ensures security on the local and remote systems.                                                                          |

### 8.5. CONFIGURING FILE INTEGRITY CHECKS WITH THE AIDE RHEL SYSTEM ROLE

You can configure Advanced Intrusion Detection Environment (AIDE) consistently across multiple systems by using the **aide** RHEL system role. The role automatically installs the **aide** package on all managed nodes, and depending on your configuration, it can perform the following actions:

- Initialize the AIDE database and store it on the control node
- Run AIDE integrity checks on the managed nodes
- Update the AIDE database and store it on the control node

Prerequisites

- You have prepared the control node and the managed nodes
- You are logged in to the control node as a user who can run playbooks on the managed nodes.
- The account you use to connect to the managed nodes has **sudo** permissions on them.

## Procedure

1. Create a playbook file, for example `~/playbook.yml`, with the following content:

```

- name: Configure system integrity
 hosts: managed-node-01.example.com
 tasks:
 - name: Configure file integrity checks with AIDE
 ansible.builtin.include_role:
 name: rhel-system-roles.aide.aide
 vars:
 aide_db_fetch_dir: files
 aide_init: true
 aide_check: false
 aide_update: false
 aide_cron_check: true
 aide_cron_interval: 0 12 * * *
```

The settings specified in the example playbook include the following:

### **aide\_db\_fetch\_dir: files**

Specifies the directory on the Ansible Control Node (ACN) for storing the AIDE database fetched from the remote nodes. With the default **files** value, the role stores the database in the same directory as the playbook. To store the database files somewhere else, specify a different path.

### **aide\_check: false**

Runs an integrity check on the remote nodes.

### **aide\_update: false**

Updates the AIDE database and stores it on the control node.

### **aide\_cron\_check: true**

Configures a periodic **cron** job that activates AIDE integrity checks on the managed nodes.

### **aide\_cron\_interval: 0 12 \* \* \***

Sets the interval for the **cron** job in the format **<minute> <hour> <day\_of\_month> <month> <day\_of\_week>**. The value **0 12 \* \* \*** sets it to run every day at noon.

For details about all variables used in the playbook, see the `/usr/share/ansible/roles/rhel-system-roles.aide/README.md` file on the control node.

2. Validate the playbook syntax:

```
$ ansible-playbook --syntax-check ~/playbook.yml
```

Note that this command only validates the syntax and does not protect against a wrong but valid configuration.

3. Run the playbook:

```
$ ansible-playbook ~/playbook.yml
```

#### Additional resources

- `/usr/share/ansible/roles/rhel-system-roles.aide/README.md` file
- `/usr/share/doc/rhel-system-roles/aide/` directory

## 8.6. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES

- **aide(1)** man page on your system
- [Kernel integrity subsystem](#)



## CHAPTER 9. ENCRYPTING BLOCK DEVICES USING LUKS

By using the disk encryption, you can protect the data on a block device by encrypting it. To access the device's decrypted contents, enter a passphrase or key as authentication. This is important for mobile computers and removable media because it helps to protect the device's contents even if it has been physically removed from the system. The LUKS format is a default implementation of block device encryption in Red Hat Enterprise Linux.

### 9.1. LUKS DISK ENCRYPTION

Linux Unified Key Setup-on-disk-format (LUKS) provides a set of tools that simplifies managing the encrypted devices. With LUKS, you can encrypt block devices and enable multiple user keys to decrypt a master key. For bulk encryption of the partition, use this master key.

Red Hat Enterprise Linux uses LUKS to perform block device encryption. By default, the option to encrypt the block device is unchecked during the installation. If you select the option to encrypt your disk, the system prompts you for a passphrase every time you boot the computer. This passphrase unlocks the bulk encryption key that decrypts your partition. If you want to modify the default partition table, you can select the partitions that you want to encrypt. This is set in the partition table settings.

#### Ciphers

The default cipher used for LUKS is **aes-xts-plain64**. The default key size for LUKS is 512 bits. The default key size for LUKS with **Anaconda** XTS mode is 512 bits. The following are the available ciphers:

- Advanced Encryption Standard (AES)
- Twofish
- Serpent

#### Operations performed by LUKS

- LUKS encrypts entire block devices and is therefore well-suited for protecting contents of mobile devices such as removable storage media or laptop disk drives.
- The underlying contents of the encrypted block device are arbitrary, which makes it useful for encrypting swap devices. This can also be useful with certain databases that use specially formatted block devices for data storage.
- LUKS uses the existing device mapper kernel subsystem.
- LUKS provides passphrase strengthening, which protects against dictionary attacks.
- LUKS devices contain multiple key slots, which means you can add backup keys or passphrases.



## IMPORTANT

LUKS is not recommended for the following scenarios:

- Disk-encryption solutions such as LUKS protect the data only when your system is off. After the system is on and LUKS has decrypted the disk, the files on that disk are available to anyone who have access to them.
- Scenarios that require multiple users to have distinct access keys to the same device. The LUKS1 format provides eight key slots and LUKS2 provides up to 32 key slots.
- Applications that require file-level encryption.

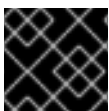
### Additional resources

- [LUKS Project Home Page](#)
- [LUKS On-Disk Format Specification](#)
- [FIPS 197: Advanced Encryption Standard \(AES\)](#)

## 9.2. LUKS VERSIONS IN RHEL

In Red Hat Enterprise Linux, the default format for LUKS encryption is LUKS2. The old LUKS1 format remains fully supported and it is provided as a format compatible with earlier Red Hat Enterprise Linux releases. LUKS2 re-encryption is considered more robust and safe to use as compared to LUKS1 re-encryption.

The LUKS2 format enables future updates of various parts without a need to modify binary structures. Internally it uses JSON text format for metadata, provides redundancy of metadata, detects metadata corruption, and automatically repairs from a metadata copy.



## IMPORTANT

Do not use LUKS2 in systems that support only LUKS1.

Since Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9.2, you can use the **cryptsetup reencrypt** command for both the LUKS versions to encrypt the disk.

### Online re-encryption

The LUKS2 format supports re-encrypting encrypted devices while the devices are in use. For example, you do not have to unmount the file system on the device to perform the following tasks:

- Changing the volume key
  - Changing the encryption algorithm
- When encrypting a non-encrypted device, you must still unmount the file system. You can remount the file system after a short initialization of the encryption.

The LUKS1 format does not support online re-encryption.

### Conversion

In certain situations, you can convert LUKS1 to LUKS2. The conversion is not possible specifically in the following scenarios:

- A LUKS1 device is marked as being used by a Policy-Based Decryption (PBD) Clevis solution. The **cryptsetup** tool does not convert the device when some **luksmeta** metadata are detected.
- A device is active. The device must be in an inactive state before any conversion is possible.

### 9.3. OPTIONS FOR DATA PROTECTION DURING LUKS2 RE-ENCRYPTION

LUKS2 provides several options that prioritize performance or data protection during the re-encryption process. It provides the following modes for the **resilience** option, and you can select any of these modes by using the **cryptsetup reencrypt --resilience resilience-mode /dev/sdx** command:

#### checksum

The default mode. It balances data protection and performance.

This mode stores individual checksums of the sectors in the re-encryption area, which the recovery process can detect for the sectors that were re-encrypted by LUKS2. The mode requires that the block device sector write is atomic.

#### journal

The safest mode but also the slowest. Since this mode journals the re-encryption area in the binary area, the LUKS2 writes the data twice.

#### none

The **none** mode prioritizes performance and provides no data protection. It protects the data only against safe process termination, such as the **SIGTERM** signal or the user pressing **Ctrl+C** key. Any unexpected system failure or application failure might result in data corruption.

If a LUKS2 re-encryption process terminates unexpectedly by force, LUKS2 can perform the recovery in one of the following ways:

#### Automatically

By performing any one of the following actions triggers the automatic recovery action during the next LUKS2 device open action:

- Executing the **cryptsetup open** command.
- Attaching the device with the **systemd-cryptsetup** command.

#### Manually

By using the **cryptsetup repair /dev/sdx** command on the LUKS2 device.

#### Additional resources

- **cryptsetup-reencrypt(8)** and **cryptsetup-repair(8)** man pages on your system

### 9.4. ENCRYPTING EXISTING DATA ON A BLOCK DEVICE USING LUKS2

You can encrypt the existing data on a not yet encrypted device by using the LUKS2 format. A new LUKS header is stored in the head of the device.

#### Prerequisites

## Prerequisites

- The block device has a file system.
- You have backed up your data.



### WARNING

You might lose your data during the encryption process due to a hardware, kernel, or human failure. Ensure that you have a reliable backup before you start encrypting the data.

## Procedure

1. Unmount all file systems on the device that you plan to encrypt, for example:

```
umount /dev/mapper/vg00-lv00
```

2. Make free space for storing a LUKS header. Use one of the following options that suits your scenario:

- In the case of encrypting a logical volume, you can extend the logical volume without resizing the file system. For example:

```
lvextend -L+32M /dev/mapper/vg00-lv00
```

- Extend the partition by using partition management tools, such as **parted**.
- Shrink the file system on the device. You can use the **resize2fs** utility for the ext2, ext3, or ext4 file systems. Note that you cannot shrink the XFS file system.

3. Initialize the encryption:

```
cryptsetup reencrypt --encrypt --init-only --reduce-device-size 32M /dev/mapper/vg00-lv00
lv00_encrypted
```

*/dev/mapper/lv00\_encrypted* is now active and ready for online encryption.

4. Mount the device:

```
mount /dev/mapper/lv00_encrypted /mnt/lv00_encrypted
```

5. Add an entry for a persistent mapping to the **/etc/crypttab** file:

- a. Find the **luksUUID**:

```
cryptsetup luksUUID /dev/mapper/vg00-lv00
a52e2cc9-a5be-47b8-a95d-6bdf4f2d9325
```

- b. Open **/etc/crypttab** in a text editor of your choice and add a device in this file:

```
$ vi /etc/crypttab
```

```
lv00_encrypted UUID=a52e2cc9-a5be-47b8-a95d-6bdf4f2d9325 none
```

Replace *a52e2cc9-a5be-47b8-a95d-6bdf4f2d9325* with your device's **luksUUID**.

- c. Refresh initramfs with **dracut**:

```
$ dracut -f --regenerate-all
```

6. Add an entry for a persistent mounting to the **/etc/fstab** file:

- a. Find the file system's UUID of the active LUKS block device:

```
$ blkid -p /dev/mapper/lv00_encrypted
```

```
/dev/mapper/lv00-encrypted: UUID="37bc2492-d8fa-4969-9d9b-bb64d3685aa9"
BLOCK_SIZE="4096" TYPE="xfs" USAGE="filesystem"
```

- b. Open **/etc/fstab** in a text editor of your choice and add a device in this file, for example:

```
$ vi /etc/fstab
```

```
UUID=37bc2492-d8fa-4969-9d9b-bb64d3685aa9 /home auto rw,user,auto 0
```

Replace *37bc2492-d8fa-4969-9d9b-bb64d3685aa9* with your file system's UUID.

7. Resume the online encryption:

```
cryptsetup reencrypt --resume-only /dev/mapper/vg00-lv00
```

```
Enter passphrase for /dev/mapper/vg00-lv00:
```

```
Auto-detected active dm device 'lv00_encrypted' for data device /dev/mapper/vg00-lv00.
```

```
Finished, time 00:31.130, 10272 MiB written, speed 330.0 MiB/s
```

## Verification

1. Verify if the existing data was encrypted:

```
cryptsetup luksDump /dev/mapper/vg00-lv00
```

```
LUKS header information
```

```
Version: 2
```

```
Epoch: 4
```

```
Metadata area: 16384 [bytes]
```

```
Keyslots area: 16744448 [bytes]
```

```
UUID: a52e2cc9-a5be-47b8-a95d-6bdf4f2d9325
```

```
Label: (no label)
```

```
Subsystem: (no subsystem)
```

```
Flags: (no flags)
```

```
Data segments:
```

```
0: crypt
offset: 33554432 [bytes]
length: (whole device)
cipher: aes-xts-plain64
[...]
```

2. View the status of the encrypted blank block device:

```
cryptsetup status lv00_encrypted

/dev/mapper/lv00_encrypted is active and is in use.
type: LUKS2
cipher: aes-xts-plain64
keysize: 512 bits
key location: keyring
device: /dev/mapper/vg00-lv00
```

### Additional resources

- **cryptsetup(8)**, **cryptsetup-reencrypt(8)**, **lvextend(8)**, **resize2fs(8)**, and **parted(8)** man pages on your system

## 9.5. ENCRYPTING EXISTING DATA ON A BLOCK DEVICE USING LUKS2 WITH A DETACHED HEADER

You can encrypt existing data on a block device without creating free space for storing a LUKS header. The header is stored in a detached location, which also serves as an additional layer of security. The procedure uses the LUKS2 encryption format.

### Prerequisites

- The block device has a file system.
- You have backed up your data.



### WARNING

You might lose your data during the encryption process due to a hardware, kernel, or human failure. Ensure that you have a reliable backup before you start encrypting the data.

### Procedure

1. Unmount all file systems on the device, for example:

```
umount /dev/nvme0n1p1
```

2. Initialize the encryption:

```
■
```

```
cryptsetup reencrypt --encrypt --init-only --header /home/header /dev/nvme0n1p1
nvme_encrypted
```

WARNING!

=====

Header file does not exist, do you want to create it?

Are you sure? (Type 'yes' in capital letters): YES

Enter passphrase for /home/header:

Verify passphrase:

/dev/mapper/nvme\_encrypted is now active and ready for online encryption.

Replace */home/header* with a path to the file with a detached LUKS header. The detached LUKS header has to be accessible to unlock the encrypted device later.

3. Mount the device:

```
mount /dev/mapper/nvme_encrypted /mnt/nvme_encrypted
```

4. Resume the online encryption:

```
cryptsetup reencrypt --resume-only --header /home/header /dev/nvme0n1p1
```

Enter passphrase for /dev/nvme0n1p1:

Auto-detected active dm device 'nvme\_encrypted' for data device /dev/nvme0n1p1.

Finished, time 00m51s, 10 GiB written, speed 198.2 MiB/s

## Verification

1. Verify if the existing data on a block device using LUKS2 with a detached header is encrypted:

```
cryptsetup luksDump /home/header
```

LUKS header information

Version: 2

Epoch: 88

Metadata area: 16384 [bytes]

Keyslots area: 16744448 [bytes]

UUID: c4f5d274-f4c0-41e3-ac36-22a917ab0386

Label: (no label)

Subsystem: (no subsystem)

Flags: (no flags)

Data segments:

0: crypt

offset: 0 [bytes]

length: (whole device)

cipher: aes-xts-plain64

sector: 512 [bytes]

[...]

2. View the status of the encrypted blank block device:

```
cryptsetup status nvme_encrypted
```

```

/dev/mapper/nvme_encrypted is active and is in use.
type: LUKS2
cipher: aes-xts-plain64
keysize: 512 bits
key location: keyring
device: /dev/nvme0n1p1

```

#### Additional resources

- **cryptsetup(8)** and **cryptsetup-reencrypt(8)** man pages on your system

## 9.6. ENCRYPTING A BLANK BLOCK DEVICE USING LUKS2

You can encrypt a blank block device, which you can use for an encrypted storage by using the LUKS2 format.

#### Prerequisites

- A blank block device. You can use commands such as **lsblk** to find if there is no real data on that device, for example, a file system.

#### Procedure

1. Setup a partition as an encrypted LUKS partition:

```

cryptsetup luksFormat /dev/nvme0n1p1

WARNING!
=====
This will overwrite data on /dev/nvme0n1p1 irrevocably.
Are you sure? (Type 'yes' in capital letters): YES
Enter passphrase for /dev/nvme0n1p1:
Verify passphrase:

```

2. Open an encrypted LUKS partition:

```

cryptsetup open /dev/nvme0n1p1 nvme0n1p1_encrypted

Enter passphrase for /dev/nvme0n1p1:

```

This unlocks the partition and maps it to a new device by using the device mapper. To not overwrite the encrypted data, this command alerts the kernel that the device is an encrypted device and addressed through LUKS by using the **/dev/mapper/device\_mapped\_name** path.

3. Create a file system to write encrypted data to the partition, which must be accessed through the device mapped name:

```

mkfs -t ext4 /dev/mapper/nvme0n1p1_encrypted

```

4. Mount the device:

```

mount /dev/mapper/nvme0n1p1_encrypted mount-point

```



## Verification

1. Verify if the blank block device is encrypted:

```
cryptsetup luksDump /dev/nvme0n1p1

LUKS header information
Version: 2
Epoch: 3
Metadata area: 16384 [bytes]
Keyslots area: 16744448 [bytes]
UUID: 34ce4870-ffdf-467c-9a9e-345a53ed8a25
Label: (no label)
Subsystem: (no subsystem)
Flags: (no flags)

Data segments:
 0: crypt
 offset: 16777216 [bytes]
 length: (whole device)
 cipher: aes-xts-plain64
 sector: 512 [bytes]
 [...]
```

2. View the status of the encrypted blank block device:

```
cryptsetup status nvme0n1p1_encrypted

/dev/mapper/nvme0n1p1_encrypted is active and is in use.
type: LUKS2
cipher: aes-xts-plain64
keysize: 512 bits
key location: keyring
device: /dev/nvme0n1p1
sector size: 512
offset: 32768 sectors
size: 20938752 sectors
mode: read/write
```

## Additional resources

- **cryptsetup(8)**, **cryptsetup-open (8)**, and **cryptsetup-luksFormat(8)** man pages on your system

## 9.7. CONFIGURING THE LUKS PASSPHRASE IN THE WEB CONSOLE

If you want to add encryption to an existing logical volume on your system, you can only do so through formatting the volume.


### Prerequisites

- You have installed the RHEL 9 web console.
- You have enabled the cockpit service.
- Your user account is allowed to log in to the web console.

For instructions, see [Installing and enabling the web console](#) .

- The **cockpit-storaged** package is installed on your system.
- Available existing logical volume without encryption.

### Procedure

1. Log in to the RHEL 9 web console.  
For details, see [Logging in to the web console](#) .
2. In the panel, click **Storage**.
3. In the **Storage** table, click the menu button  for the storage device you want to encrypt and click **Format**.
4. In the **Encryption field**, select the encryption specification, **LUKS1** or **LUKS2**.
5. Set and confirm your new passphrase.
6. Optional: Modify further encryption options.
7. Finalize formatting settings.
8. Click **Format**.

## 9.8. CHANGING THE LUKS PASSPHRASE IN THE WEB CONSOLE

Change a LUKS passphrase on an encrypted disk or partition in the web console.

### Prerequisites

- You have installed the RHEL 9 web console.
- You have enabled the cockpit service.
- Your user account is allowed to log in to the web console.  
For instructions, see [Installing and enabling the web console](#) .
- The **cockpit-storaged** package is installed on your system.

### Procedure

1. Log in to the RHEL 9 web console.  
For details, see [Logging in to the web console](#) .
2. In the panel, click **Storage**.
3. In the **Storage** table, select the disk with encrypted data.
4. On the disk page, scroll to the **Keys** section and click the edit button.
5. In the **Change passphrase** dialog window:
  - a. Enter your current passphrase.

- b. Enter your new passphrase.
  - c. Confirm your new passphrase.
6. Click **Save**.

## 9.9. CREATING A LUKS2 ENCRYPTED VOLUME BY USING THE STORAGE RHEL SYSTEM ROLE

You can use the **storage** role to create and configure a volume encrypted with LUKS by running an Ansible playbook.

### Prerequisites

- [You have prepared the control node and the managed nodes](#)
- You are logged in to the control node as a user who can run playbooks on the managed nodes.
- The account you use to connect to the managed nodes has **sudo** permissions on them.

### Procedure

1. Store your sensitive variables in an encrypted file:

- a. Create the vault:

```
$ ansible-vault create ~/vault.yml
New Vault password: <vault_password>
Confirm New Vault password: <vault_password>
```

- b. After the **ansible-vault create** command opens an editor, enter the sensitive data in the **<key>: <value>** format:

```
luks_password: <password>
```

- c. Save the changes, and close the editor. Ansible encrypts the data in the vault.

2. Create a playbook file, for example **~/playbook.yml**, with the following content:

```

- name: Manage local storage
 hosts: managed-node-01.example.com
 vars_files:
 - ~/vault.yml
 tasks:
 - name: Create and configure a volume encrypted with LUKS
 ansible.builtin.include_role:
 name: redhat.rhel_system_roles.storage
 vars:
 storage_volumes:
 - name: barefs
 type: disk
 disks:
 - sdb
```

```
fs_type: xfs
fs_label: <label>
mount_point: /mnt/data
encryption: true
encryption_password: "{{ luks_password }}"
```

For details about all variables used in the playbook, see the **/usr/share/ansible/roles/rhel-system-roles.storage/README.md** file on the control node.

3. Validate the playbook syntax:

```
$ ansible-playbook --ask-vault-pass --syntax-check ~/playbook.yml
```

Note that this command only validates the syntax and does not protect against a wrong but valid configuration.

4. Run the playbook:

```
$ ansible-playbook --ask-vault-pass ~/playbook.yml
```

## Verification

1. Find the **luksUUID** value of the LUKS encrypted volume:

```
ansible managed-node-01.example.com -m command -a 'cryptsetup luksUUID /dev/sdb'

4e4e7970-1822-470e-b55a-e91efe5d0f5c
```

2. View the encryption status of the volume:

```
ansible managed-node-01.example.com -m command -a 'cryptsetup status luks-4e4e7970-1822-470e-b55a-e91efe5d0f5c'

/dev/mapper/luks-4e4e7970-1822-470e-b55a-e91efe5d0f5c is active and is in use.
type: LUKS2
cipher: aes-xts-plain64
keysize: 512 bits
key location: keyring
device: /dev/sdb
...
```

3. Verify the created LUKS encrypted volume:

```
ansible managed-node-01.example.com -m command -a 'cryptsetup luksDump /dev/sdb'

LUKS header information
Version: 2
Epoch: 3
Metadata area: 16384 [bytes]
Keyslots area: 16744448 [bytes]
UUID: 4e4e7970-1822-470e-b55a-e91efe5d0f5c
Label: (no label)
```

Subsystem: (no subsystem)

Flags: (no flags)

Data segments:

0: crypt

offset: 16777216 [bytes]

length: (whole device)

cipher: aes-xts-plain64

sector: 512 [bytes]

...

### Additional resources

- **`/usr/share/ansible/roles/rhel-system-roles.storage/README.md`** file
- **`/usr/share/doc/rhel-system-roles/storage/`** directory
- [Encrypting block devices by using LUKS](#)
- [Ansible vault](#)

## CHAPTER 10. CONFIGURING AUTOMATED UNLOCKING OF ENCRYPTED VOLUMES BY USING POLICY-BASED DECRYPTION

Policy-Based Decryption (PBD) is a collection of technologies that enable unlocking encrypted root and secondary volumes of hard drives on physical and virtual machines. PBD uses a variety of unlocking methods, such as user passwords, a Trusted Platform Module (TPM) device, a PKCS #11 device connected to a system, for example, a smart card, or a special network server.

PBD allows combining different unlocking methods into a policy, which makes it possible to unlock the same volume in different ways. The current implementation of the PBD in RHEL consists of the Clevis framework and plug-ins called *pins*. Each pin provides a separate unlocking capability. Currently, the following pins are available:

### **tang**

Allows unlocking volumes by using a network server.

### **tpm2**

Allows unlocking volumes by using a TPM2 policy.

### **pkcs11**

Allows unlocking volumes by using a PKCS #11 URI.

### **sss**

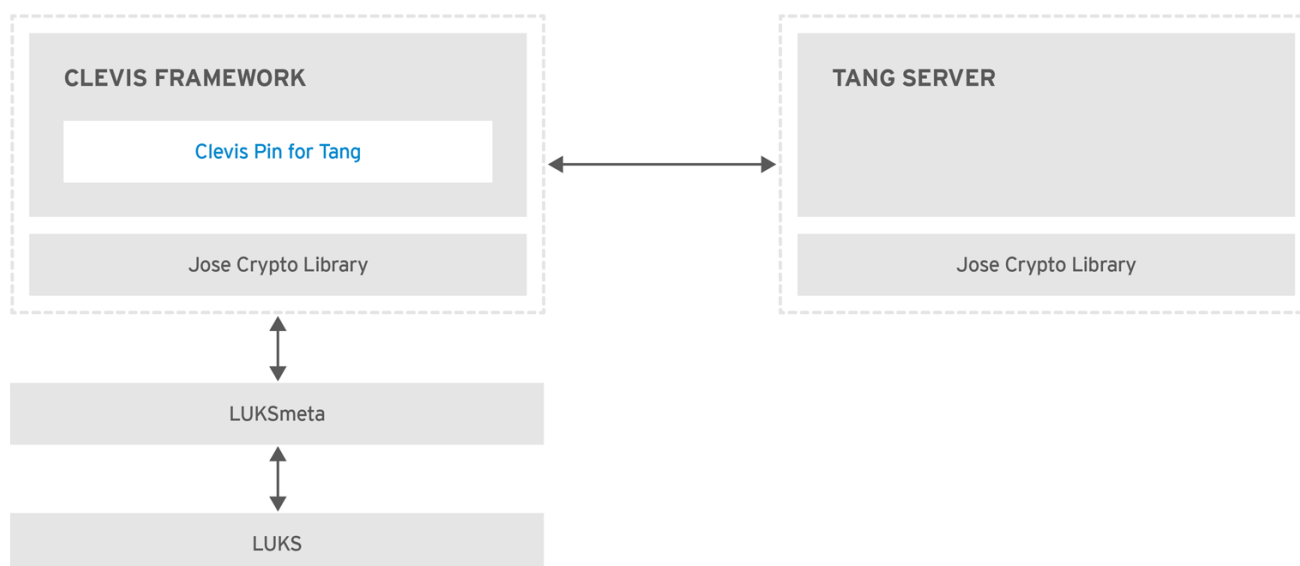
Allows deploying high-availability systems by using the Shamir's Secret Sharing (SSS) cryptographic scheme.

## 10.1. NETWORK-BOUND DISK ENCRYPTION

The Network Bound Disc Encryption (NBDE) is a subcategory of Policy-Based Decryption (PBD) that allows binding encrypted volumes to a special network server. The current implementation of the NBDE includes a Clevis pin for the Tang server and the Tang server itself.

In RHEL, NBDE is implemented through the following components and technologies:

**Figure 10.1. NBDE scheme when using a LUKS1-encrypted volume. The luksmeta package is not used for LUKS2 volumes.**



*Tang* is a server for binding data to network presence. It makes a system containing your data available when the system is bound to a certain secure network. Tang is stateless and does not require TLS or authentication. Unlike escrow-based solutions, where the server stores all encryption keys and has knowledge of every key ever used, Tang never interacts with any client keys, so it never gains any identifying information from the client.

*Clevis* is a pluggable framework for automated decryption. In NBDE, Clevis provides automated unlocking of LUKS volumes. The **clevis** package provides the client side of the feature.

A *Clevis pin* is a plug-in into the Clevis framework. One of such pins is a plug-in that implements interactions with the NBDE server – Tang.

Clevis and Tang are generic client and server components that provide network-bound encryption. In RHEL, they are used in conjunction with LUKS to encrypt and decrypt root and non-root storage volumes to accomplish Network-Bound Disk Encryption.

Both client- and server-side components use the *José* library to perform encryption and decryption operations.

When you begin provisioning NBDE, the Clevis pin for Tang server gets a list of the Tang server’s advertised asymmetric keys. Alternatively, since the keys are asymmetric, a list of Tang’s public keys can be distributed out of band so that clients can operate without access to the Tang server. This mode is called *offline provisioning*.

The Clevis pin for Tang uses one of the public keys to generate a unique, cryptographically-strong encryption key. Once the data is encrypted using this key, the key is discarded. The Clevis client should store the state produced by this provisioning operation in a convenient location. This process of encrypting data is the *provisioning step*.

The LUKS version 2 (LUKS2) is the default disk-encryption format in RHEL, hence, the provisioning state for NBDE is stored as a token in a LUKS2 header. The leveraging of provisioning state for NBDE by the **luksmeta** package is used only for volumes encrypted with LUKS1.

The Clevis pin for Tang supports both LUKS1 and LUKS2 without specification need. Clevis can encrypt plain-text files but you have to use the **cryptsetup** tool for encrypting block devices. See the [Encrypting block devices using LUKS](#) for more information.

When the client is ready to access its data, it loads the metadata produced in the provisioning step and it responds to recover the encryption key. This process is the *recovery step*.

In NBDE, Clevis binds a LUKS volume using a pin so that it can be automatically unlocked. After successful completion of the binding process, the disk can be unlocked using the provided Dracut unlocker.



## NOTE

If the **kdump** kernel crash dumping mechanism is set to save the content of the system memory to a LUKS-encrypted device, you are prompted for entering a password during the second kernel boot.

## Additional resources

- [NBDE \(Network-Bound Disk Encryption\) Technology](#) Knowledgebase article
- **tang(8)**, **clevis(1)**, **jose(1)**, and **clevis-luks-unlockers(7)** man pages on your system

- [How to set up Network-Bound Disk Encryption with multiple LUKS devices \(Clevis + Tang unlocking\)](#) Knowledgebase article

## 10.2. DEPLOYING A TANG SERVER WITH SELINUX IN ENFORCING MODE

You can use a Tang server to automatically unlock LUKS-encrypted volumes on Clevis-enabled clients. In the minimalistic scenario, you deploy a Tang server on port 80 by installing the **tang** package and entering the **systemctl enable tangd.socket --now** command. The following example procedure demonstrates the deployment of a Tang server running on a custom port as a confined service in SELinux enforcing mode.

### Prerequisites

- The **polycoreutils-python-utils** package and its dependencies are installed.
- The **firewalld** service is running.

### Procedure

1. To install the **tang** package and its dependencies, enter the following command as **root**:

```
dnf install tang
```

2. Pick an unoccupied port, for example, *7500/tcp*, and allow the **tangd** service to bind to that port:

```
semanage port -a -t tangd_port_t -p tcp 7500
```

Note that a port can be used only by one service at a time, and thus an attempt to use an already occupied port implies the **ValueError: Port already defined** error message.

3. Open the port in the firewall:

```
firewall-cmd --add-port=7500/tcp
firewall-cmd --runtime-to-permanent
```

4. Enable the **tangd** service:

```
systemctl enable tangd.socket
```

5. Create an override file:

```
systemctl edit tangd.socket
```

6. In the following editor screen, which opens an empty **override.conf** file located in the **/etc/systemd/system/tangd.socket.d/** directory, change the default port for the Tang server from 80 to the previously picked number by adding the following lines:

```
[Socket]
ListenStream=
ListenStream=7500
```





## IMPORTANT

Insert the previous code snippet between the lines starting with **# Anything between here** and **# Lines below this**, otherwise the system discards your changes.

7. Save the changes and exit the editor. In the default **vi** editor, you can do that by pressing **Esc** to switch into command mode, entering **:wq**, and pressing **Enter**.

8. Reload the changed configuration:

```
systemctl daemon-reload
```

9. Check that your configuration is working:

```
systemctl show tangd.socket -p Listen
Listen=[::]:7500 (Stream)
```

10. Start the **tangd** service:

```
systemctl restart tangd.socket
```

Because **tangd** uses the **systemd** socket activation mechanism, the server starts as soon as the first connection comes in. A new set of cryptographic keys is automatically generated at the first start. To perform cryptographic operations such as manual key generation, use the **jose** utility.

## Verification

- On your NBDE client, verify that your Tang server works correctly by using the following command. The command must return the identical message you pass for encryption and decryption:

```
echo test | clevis encrypt tang '{"url": "<tang.server.example.com:7500>"}' -y | clevis decrypt
test
```

## Additional resources

- **tang(8)**, **semanage(8)**, **firewall-cmd(1)**, **jose(1)**, **systemd.unit(5)**, and **systemd.socket(5)** man pages on your system

## 10.3. ROTATING TANG SERVER KEYS AND UPDATING BINDINGS ON CLIENTS

For security reasons, rotate your Tang server keys and update existing bindings on clients periodically. The precise interval at which you should rotate them depends on your application, key sizes, and institutional policy.

Alternatively, you can rotate Tang keys by using the **nbde\_server** RHEL system role. See [Using the nbde\\_server system role for setting up multiple Tang servers](#) for more information.

## Prerequisites

- A Tang server is running.

- The **clevis** and **clevis-luks** packages are installed on your clients.

## Procedure

1. Rename all keys in the **/var/db/tang** key database directory to have a leading **.** to hide them from advertisement. Note that the file names in the following example differs from unique file names in the key database directory of your Tang server:

```
cd /var/db/tang
ls -l
-rw-r--r--. 1 root root 349 Feb 7 14:55 UV6dqXSwe1bRKG3KbJmdiR020hY.jwk
-rw-r--r--. 1 root root 354 Feb 7 14:55 y9hxLTQSiSB5jSEGWnjhY8fDTJU.jwk
mv UV6dqXSwe1bRKG3KbJmdiR020hY.jwk .UV6dqXSwe1bRKG3KbJmdiR020hY.jwk
mv y9hxLTQSiSB5jSEGWnjhY8fDTJU.jwk .y9hxLTQSiSB5jSEGWnjhY8fDTJU.jwk
```

2. Check that you renamed and therefore hid all keys from the Tang server advertisement:

```
ls -l
total 0
```

3. Generate new keys using the **/usr/libexec/tangd-keygen** command in **/var/db/tang** on the Tang server:

```
/usr/libexec/tangd-keygen /var/db/tang
ls /var/db/tang
3ZWS6-cDrCG61UPJS2BMmPU4I54.jwk zyLuX6hijUy_PSeUEFDi7hi38.jwk
```

4. Check that your Tang server advertises the signing key from the new key pair, for example:

```
tang-show-keys 7500
3ZWS6-cDrCG61UPJS2BMmPU4I54
```

5. On your NBDE clients, use the **clevis luks report** command to check if the keys advertised by the Tang server remains the same. You can identify slots with the relevant binding using the **clevis luks list** command, for example:

```
clevis luks list -d /dev/sda2
1: tang '{"url":"http://tang.srv"}'
clevis luks report -d /dev/sda2 -s 1
...
Report detected that some keys were rotated.
Do you want to regenerate luks metadata with "clevis luks regen -d /dev/sda2 -s 1"? [ynYN]
```

6. To regenerate LUKS metadata for the new keys either press **y** to the prompt of the previous command, or use the **clevis luks regen** command:

```
clevis luks regen -d /dev/sda2 -s 1
```

7. When you are sure that all old clients use the new keys, you can remove the old keys from the Tang server, for example:

```
cd /var/db/tang
rm *.jwk
```

**WARNING**

Removing the old keys while clients are still using them can result in data loss. If you accidentally remove such keys, use the **clevis luks regen** command on the clients, and provide your LUKS password manually.

**Additional resources**

- **tang-show-keys(1)**, **clevis-luks-list(1)**, **clevis-luks-report(1)**, and **clevis-luks-regen(1)** man pages on your system

## 10.4. CONFIGURING AUTOMATED UNLOCKING BY USING A TANG KEY IN THE WEB CONSOLE

You can configure automated unlocking of a LUKS-encrypted storage device using a key provided by a Tang server.

**Prerequisites**

- You have installed the RHEL 9 web console.
- You have enabled the cockpit service.
- Your user account is allowed to log in to the web console.  
For instructions, see [Installing and enabling the web console](#).
- The **cockpit-storaged** and **clevis-luks** packages are installed on your system.
- The **cockpit.socket** service is running at port 9090.
- A Tang server is available. See [Deploying a Tang server with SELinux in enforcing mode](#) for details.
- You have **root** privileges or permissions to enter administrative commands with **sudo**.

**Procedure**

1. Log in to the RHEL 9 web console.  
For details, see [Logging in to the web console](#).
2. Switch to administrative access, provide your credentials, and click **Storage**. In the **Storage** table, click the disk that contains an encrypted volume you plan to add to unlock automatically.
3. In the following page with details of the selected disk, click **+** in the **Keys** section to add a Tang key:

Storage > vda - VirtIO Disk > vda2

|      |                                            |
|------|--------------------------------------------|
| Name | -                                          |
| UUID | 44d29c6b-02                                |
| Type | Linux filesystem data <a href="#">edit</a> |
| Size | 15.0 GB                                    |

### Encryption

|                   |                                                       |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| Encryption type   | LUKS2                                                 |
| Cleartext device  | /dev/mapper/luks-37128c9a-70a2-483f-8d64-9f00acf80449 |
| Stored passphrase | none <a href="#">edit</a>                             |
| Options           | discard <a href="#">edit</a>                          |

### Keys

Passphrase

Slot 0

[+](#)

[-](#)

- Select **Tang keyserver** as **Key source**, provide the address of your Tang server, and a password that unlocks the LUKS-encrypted device. Click **Add** to confirm:

### Add key

Key source ☐ Passphrase ☒ Tang keyserver

Keyserver address

Disk passphrase  [Show](#)

Saving a new passphrase requires unlocking the disk. Please provide a current disk passphrase.

[Add](#) [Cancel](#)

The following dialog window provides a command to verify that the key hash matches.

- In a terminal on the Tang server, use the **tang-show-keys** command to display the key hash for comparison. In this example, the Tang server is running on the port 7500:

```
tang-show-keys 7500
x100_1k6GPiDOaMIL3WbpCjHOy9ul1bSfdhI3M08wO0
```

- Click **Trust key** when the key hashes in the web console and in the output of previously listed commands are the same:

### Verify key

Check the key hash with the Tang server.

Copy to clipboard

#### How to check

In a terminal, run: `ssh tang1. com tang-show-keys`

Check that the SHA-256 or SHA-1 hash from the command matches this dialog.

**SHA-256**

x100\_1k6GPiD0aMLL3WbpCjH0y9u11bSfdhI3M08w00

**SHA-1**

hmINhleYB000ddFszgICjqJizFI

Trust key
Cancel

- In RHEL 9.2 and later, after you select an encrypted root file system and a Tang server, you can skip adding the **rd.neednet=1** parameter to the kernel command line, installing the **clevis-dracut** package, and regenerating an initial RAM disk ( **initrd**). For non-root file systems, the web console now enables the **remote-cryptsetup.target** and **clevis-luks-akspass.path systemd** units, installs the **clevis-systemd** package, and adds the **\_netdev** parameter to the **fstab** and **crypttab** configuration files.

## Verification

- Check that the newly added Tang key is now listed in the **Keys** section with the **Keyserver** type:

### Encryption

|                   |                                                       |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| Encryption type   | LUKS2                                                 |
| Cleartext device  | /dev/mapper/luks-37128c9a-70a2-483f-8d64-9f00acf80449 |
| Stored passphrase | none <a href="#">edit</a>                             |
| Options           | discard <a href="#">edit</a>                          |

### Keys

+

|            |                    |                      |                      |
|------------|--------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Passphrase | Slot 0             | <a href="#">edit</a> | <a href="#">-</a>    |
| Keyserver  | http://tang1. com/ | Slot 1               | <a href="#">edit</a> |

- Verify that the bindings are available for the early boot, for example:

```
lsinitrd | grep clevis-luks
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root 48 Jan 4 02:56
etc/systemd/system/cryptsetup.target.wants/clevis-luks-askpass.path ->
```

```
/usr/lib/systemd/system/clevis-luks-askpass.path
```

```
...
```

### Additional resources

- [Getting started using the RHEL web console](#)

## 10.5. BASIC NBDE AND TPM2 ENCRYPTION-CLIENT OPERATIONS

The Clevis framework can encrypt plain-text files and decrypt both ciphertexts in the JSON Web Encryption (JWE) format and LUKS-encrypted block devices. Clevis clients can use either Tang network servers or Trusted Platform Module 2.0 (TPM 2.0) chips for cryptographic operations.

The following commands demonstrate the basic functionality provided by Clevis on examples containing plain-text files. You can also use them for troubleshooting your NBDE or Clevis+TPM deployments.

### Encryption client bound to a Tang server

- To check that a Clevis encryption client binds to a Tang server, use the **clevis encrypt tang** sub-command:

```
$ clevis encrypt tang '{"url":"http://tang.srv:port"}' < input-plain.txt > secret.jwe
```

The advertisement contains the following signing keys:

```
_Oslk0T-E2l6qjfdDiwVmidoZjA
```

```
Do you wish to trust these keys? [ynYN] y
```

Change the **http://tang.srv:port** URL in the previous example to match the URL of the server where **tang** is installed. The **secret.jwe** output file contains your encrypted cipher text in the JWE format. This cipher text is read from the **input-plain.txt** input file.

Alternatively, if your configuration requires a non-interactive communication with a Tang server without SSH access, you can download an advertisement and save it to a file:

```
$ curl -sfg http://tang.srv:port/adv -o adv.jws
```

Use the advertisement in the **adv.jws** file for any following tasks, such as encryption of files or messages:

```
$ echo 'hello' | clevis encrypt tang '{"url":"http://tang.srv:port","adv":"adv.jws"}
```

- To decrypt data, use the **clevis decrypt** command and provide the cipher text (JWE):

```
$ clevis decrypt < secret.jwe > output-plain.txt
```

### Encryption client using TPM 2.0

- To encrypt using a TPM 2.0 chip, use the **clevis encrypt tpm2** sub-command with the only argument in form of the JSON configuration object:

```
$ clevis encrypt tpm2 '{}' < input-plain.txt > secret.jwe
```

To choose a different hierarchy, hash, and key algorithms, specify configuration properties, for example:

```
$ clevis encrypt tpm2 '{"hash":"sha256","key":"rsa"}' < input-plain.txt > secret.jwe
```

- To decrypt the data, provide the ciphertext in the JSON Web Encryption (JWE) format:

```
$ clevis decrypt < secret.jwe > output-plain.txt
```

The pin also supports sealing data to a Platform Configuration Registers (PCR) state. That way, the data can only be unsealed if the PCR hashes values match the policy used when sealing.

For example, to seal the data to the PCR with index 0 and 7 for the SHA-256 bank:

```
$ clevis encrypt tpm2 '{"pcr_bank":"sha256","pcr_ids":"0,7"}' < input-plain.txt > secret.jwe
```



### WARNING

Hashes in PCRs can be rewritten, and you no longer can unlock your encrypted volume. For this reason, add a strong passphrase that enable you to unlock the encrypted volume manually even when a value in a PCR changes.

If the system cannot automatically unlock your encrypted volume after an upgrade of the **shim-x64** package, see the Red Hat Knowledgebase solution [Clevis TPM2 no longer decrypts LUKS devices after a restart](#).

### Additional resources

- **clevis-encrypt-tang(1)**, **clevis-luks-unlockers(7)**, **clevis(1)**, and **clevis-encrypt-tpm2(1)** man pages on your system
- **clevis**, **clevis decrypt**, and **clevis encrypt tang** commands without any arguments show the built-in CLI help, for example:

```
$ clevis encrypt tang
Usage: clevis encrypt tang CONFIG < PLAINTEXT > JWE
...
```

## 10.6. CONFIGURING NBDE CLIENTS FOR AUTOMATED UNLOCKING OF LUKS-ENCRYPTED VOLUMES

With the Clevis framework, you can configure clients for automated unlocking of LUKS-encrypted volumes when a selected Tang server is available. This creates an NBDE (Network-Bound Disk Encryption) deployment.

### Prerequisites

- A Tang server is running and available.

## Procedure

1. To automatically unlock an existing LUKS-encrypted volume, install the **clevis-luks** subpackage:

```
dnf install clevis-luks
```

2. Identify the LUKS-encrypted volume for PBD. In the following example, the block device is referred as `/dev/sda2`:

```
lsblk
NAME MAJ:MIN RM SIZE RO TYPE MOUNTPOINT
sda 8:0 0 12G 0 disk
├─sda1 8:1 0 1G 0 part /boot
├─sda2 8:2 0 11G 0 part
│ └─luks-40e20552-2ade-4954-9d56-565aa7994fb6 253:0 0 11G 0 crypt
│ ├─rhel-root 253:0 0 9.8G 0 lvm /
│ └─rhel-swap 253:1 0 1.2G 0 lvm [SWAP]
```

3. Bind the volume to a Tang server using the **clevis luks bind** command:

```
clevis luks bind -d /dev/sda2 tang '{"url":"http://tang.srv"}'
```

The advertisement contains the following signing keys:

```
_Oslk0T-E2l6qjfdDiwVmidoZjA
```

Do you wish to trust these keys? [ynYN] y

You are about to initialize a LUKS device for metadata storage.

Attempting to initialize it may result in data loss if data was already written into the LUKS header gap in a different format.

A backup is advised before initialization is performed.

Do you wish to initialize /dev/sda2? [yn] y

Enter existing LUKS password:

This command performs four steps:

- a. Creates a new key with the same entropy as the LUKS master key.
- b. Encrypts the new key with Clevis.
- c. Stores the Clevis JWE object in the LUKS2 header token or uses LUKSMeta if the non-default LUKS1 header is used.
- d. Enables the new key for use with LUKS.



### NOTE

The binding procedure assumes that there is at least one free LUKS password slot. The **clevis luks bind** command takes one of the slots.

The volume can now be unlocked with your existing password as well as with the Clevis policy.

4. To enable the early boot system to process the disk binding, use the **dracut** tool on an already installed system. In RHEL, Clevis produces a generic **initrd** (initial RAM disk) without host-specific configuration options and does not automatically add parameters such as **rd.neednet=1**



to the kernel command line. If your configuration relies on a Tang pin that requires network during early boot, use the **--hostonly-cmdline** argument and **dracut** adds **rd.neednet=1** when it detects a Tang binding:

- a. Install the **clevis-dracut** package:

```
dnf install clevis-dracut
```

- b. Regenerate the initial RAM disk:

```
dracut -fv --regenerate-all --hostonly-cmdline
```

- c. Alternatively, create a .conf file in the **/etc/dracut.conf.d/** directory, and add the **hostonly\_cmdline=yes** option to the file. Then, you can use **dracut** without **--hostonly-cmdline**, for example:

```
echo "hostonly_cmdline=yes" > /etc/dracut.conf.d/clevis.conf
dracut -fv --regenerate-all
```

- d. You can also ensure that networking for a Tang pin is available during early boot by using the **grubby** tool on the system where Clevis is installed:

```
grubby --update-kernel=ALL --args="rd.neednet=1"
```

## Verification

1. Verify that the Clevis JWE object is successfully placed in a LUKS header, use the **clevis luks list** command:

```
clevis luks list -d /dev/sda2
1: tang '{"url":"http://tang.srv:port"}'
```

2. Check that the bindings are available for the early boot, for example:

```
lsinitrd | grep clevis-luks
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root 48 Jan 4 02:56
etc/systemd/system/cryptsetup.target.wants/clevis-luks-askpass.path ->
/usr/lib/systemd/system/clevis-luks-askpass.path
...
```

## Additional resources

- **clevis-luks-bind(1)** and **dracut.cmdline(7)** man pages on your system
- [Network boot options](#)
- [Looking forward to Linux network configuration in the initial ramdisk \(initrd\)](#) (Red Hat Enable Sysadmin)

## 10.7. CONFIGURING NBDE CLIENTS WITH STATIC IP CONFIGURATION

To use NBDE for clients with static IP configuration (without DHCP), you must pass your network configuration to the **dracut** tool manually.

## Prerequisites

- A Tang server is running and available.
- The NBDE client is configured for automated unlocking of encrypted volumes by the Tang server.  
For details, see [Configuring NBDE clients for automated unlocking of LUKS-encrypted volumes](#).

## Procedure

1. You can provide your static network configuration as a value for the **kernel-cmdline** option in a **dracut** command, for example:

```
dracut -fv --regenerate-all --kernel-cmdline
"ip=192.0.2.10::192.0.2.1:255.255.255.0::ens3:none nameserver=192.0.2.100"
```

2. Alternatively, create a .conf file in the **/etc/dracut.conf.d/** directory with the static network information and then, regenerate the initial RAM disk image:

```
cat /etc/dracut.conf.d/static_ip.conf
kernel_cmdline="ip=192.0.2.10::192.0.2.1:255.255.255.0::ens3:none
nameserver=192.0.2.100"
dracut -fv --regenerate-all
```

## 10.8. CONFIGURING MANUAL ENROLLMENT OF LUKS-ENCRYPTED VOLUMES BY USING A TPM 2.0 POLICY

You can configure unlocking of LUKS-encrypted volumes by using a Trusted Platform Module 2.0 (TPM 2.0) policy.

## Prerequisites

- An accessible TPM 2.0-compatible device.
- A system with the 64-bit Intel or 64-bit AMD architecture.

## Procedure

1. To automatically unlock an existing LUKS-encrypted volume, install the **clevis-luks** subpackage:

```
dnf install clevis-luks
```

2. Identify the LUKS-encrypted volume for PBD. In the following example, the block device is referred as **/dev/sda2**:

```
lsblk
NAME MAJ:MIN RM SIZE RO TYPE MOUNTPOINT
sda 8:0 0 12G 0 disk
├─sda1 8:1 0 1G 0 part /boot
├─sda2 8:2 0 11G 0 part
│ └─luks-40e20552-2ade-4954-9d56-565aa7994fb6 253:0 0 11G 0 crypt
│ ├─rhel-root 253:0 0 9.8G 0 lvm /
│ └─rhel-swap 253:1 0 1.2G 0 lvm [SWAP]
```

3. Bind the volume to a TPM 2.0 device using the **clevis luks bind** command, for example:

```
clevis luks bind -d /dev/sda2 tpm2 '{"hash":"sha256","key":"rsa"}'
...
Do you wish to initialize /dev/sda2? [yn] y
Enter existing LUKS password:
```

This command performs four steps:

- a. Creates a new key with the same entropy as the LUKS master key.
- b. Encrypts the new key with Clevis.
- c. Stores the Clevis JWE object in the LUKS2 header token or uses LUKSMeta if the non-default LUKS1 header is used.
- d. Enables the new key for use with LUKS.



#### NOTE

The binding procedure assumes that there is at least one free LUKS password slot. The **clevis luks bind** command takes one of the slots.

Alternatively, if you want to seal data to specific Platform Configuration Registers (PCR) states, add the **pcr\_bank** and **pcr\_ids** values to the **clevis luks bind** command, for example:

```
clevis luks bind -d /dev/sda2 tpm2
'{"hash":"sha256","key":"rsa","pcr_bank":"sha256","pcr_ids":["0,1"]}'
```



#### IMPORTANT

Because the data can only be unsealed if PCR hashes values match the policy used when sealing and the hashes can be rewritten, add a strong passphrase that enable you to unlock the encrypted volume manually when a value in a PCR changes.

If the system cannot automatically unlock your encrypted volume after upgrading the **shim-x64** package, see the Red Hat Knowledgebase solution [Clevis TPM2 no longer decrypts LUKS devices after a restart](#).

4. The volume can now be unlocked with your existing password as well as with the Clevis policy.
5. To enable the early boot system to process the disk binding, use the **dracut** tool on an already installed system:

```
dnf install clevis-dracut
dracut -fv --regenerate-all
```

## Verification

1. To verify that the Clevis JWE object is successfully placed in a LUKS header, use the **clevis luks list** command:

—

```
clevis luks list -d /dev/sda2
1: tpm2 '{"hash":"sha256","key":"rsa"}
```

## Additional resources

- **clevis-luks-bind(1)**, **clevis-encrypt-tpm2(1)**, and **dracut.cmdline(7)** man pages on your system

## 10.9. CONFIGURING UNLOCKING OF LUKS-ENCRYPTED VOLUMES BY USING A PKCS #11 PIN

You can configure unlocking of LUKS-encrypted volumes by using a device compatible with PKCS #11, which can be either a smart card or a hardware security module (HSM).

Automated unlocking of encrypted volumes with a Clevis PKCS #11 pin requires also changes in the **/etc/crypttab** file, which configure the **systemd** manager to use an **AF\_UNIX** socket to wait for the keyphrase for unlocking the volumes instead of prompting the user through the console.

The Clevis PKCS #11 unit file configures the socket in the **/run/systemd/clevis-pkcs11.sock** file for sending and receiving the information about disk unlocking. For disks unlocked through a Clevis PKCS #11 pin, you must configure the socket file as a key file.

### Prerequisites

- The PKCS #11 device is already configured and accessible.
- The **clevis-pin-pkcs11** package is installed.
- At least one free LUKS password slot for the **clevis luks bind** command.

### Procedure

1. Identify the LUKS-encrypted volume for PBD. In the following example, the block device is referred as **/dev/sda2**:

```
lsblk
NAME MAJ:MIN RM SIZE RO TYPE MOUNTPOINT
sda 8:0 0 12G 0 disk
├─sda1 8:1 0 1G 0 part /boot
├─sda2 8:2 0 11G 0 part
├─luks-40e20552-2ade-4954-9d56-565aa7994fb6 253:0 0 11G 0 crypt
│ ├─rhel-root 253:0 0 9.8G 0 lvm /
│ └─rhel-swap 253:1 0 1.2G 0 lvm [SWAP]
```

2. Identify the URI of the PKCS #11 device you want to use for unlocking volumes, for example:

```
$ pkcs11-tool -L | grep uri
uri :
pkcs11:model=PKCS%2315%20emulated;manufacturer=piv_II;serial=42facd1f749ece7f;token=
clevis
uri :
pkcs11:model=PKCS%2315%20emulated;manufacturer=OpenPGP%20project;serial=000f060
80f4f;token=OpenPGP%20card%20%28User%20PIN%29
```

- Bind the volume to a PKCS #11 device with the **clevis luks bind** command, for example:

```
clevis luks bind -d /dev/sda2 pkcs11
'{"uri":"pkcs11:model=PKCS%2315%20emulated;manufacturer=OpenPGP%20project;serial=0
00f06080f4f;token=OpenPGP%20card%20%28User%20PIN%29;id=%03;object=Authenticatio
n%20key;type=public"}'
...
Do you wish to initialize /dev/sda2? [yn] y
Enter existing LUKS password:
```

This command performs the following steps:

- Creates a new key with the same entropy as the LUKS master key.
  - Encrypts the new key with Clevis.
  - Stores the Clevis JWE object in the LUKS2 header token or uses LUKSMeta if the non-default LUKS1 header is used.
  - Enables the new key for use with LUKS.
- Optionally: If your scenario requires specifying the module to use, add the module-path URI parameter:

```
clevis luks bind -d /dev/sda2 pkcs11 '{"uri":"pkcs11:module-
path=/usr/lib64/libykcs11.so.2";model=PKCS%2315%20emulated;manufacturer=OpenPGP%2
0project;serial=000f06080f4f;token=OpenPGP%20card%20%28User%20PIN%29;id=%03;obj
ect=Authentication%20key;type=public}'
```

- Enable the **clevis-luks-pkcs11-askpass.socket** unit:

```
systemctl enable --now clevis-luks-pkcs11-askpass.socket
```

- Open the **/etc/crypttab** file in a text editor and identify the line containing the LUKS-encrypted volume you want to unlock by the PKCS #11 pin, for example:

```
luks-6e38d5e1-7f83-43cc-819a-7416bcbf9f84 UUID=6e38d5e1-7f83-43cc-819a-
7416bcbf9f84 - -
```

- Replace the dashes with the **/run/systemd/clevis-pkcs11.sock** file path and the **keyfile-timeout** option:

```
luks-6e38d5e1-7f83-43cc-819a-7416bcbf9f84 UUID=6e38d5e1-7f83-43cc-819a-
7416bcbf9f84 /run/systemd/clevis-pkcs11.sock keyfile-timeout=30s
```

The **keyfile-timeout** option provides a fall-through mechanism for when an unlocking error occurs and the system requires entering the passphrase manually through the console.

- Save the changes, and exit the editor.
- To enable the early boot system to process the disk binding, which is required for unlocking root file systems, use the **dracut** tool on an already installed system:

```
dracut -fv --regenerate-all
```

- Restart the system.

During the following boot process, the system prompts for the PKCS #11 device PIN and decrypts the corresponding configured encrypted disk only in case you enter the correct PIN.

## Verification

- Instead of manually testing the boot process, you can encrypt and decrypt a text message with the following command:

```
echo "top secret" | clevis encrypt pkcs11 '{"uri":"pkcs11:module-
path=/usr/lib64/libykcs11.so.2?pin-value=<PIN>"}' | clevis decrypt
```

Replace **<PIN>** with a PIN value. You must enter this PIN value to decrypt the message.

- To verify that the Clevis JWE object is successfully placed in a LUKS header, use the **clevis luks list** command, for example:

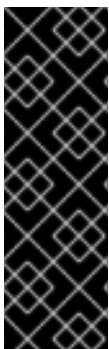
```
clevis luks list -d /dev/sda2
1: pkcs11 '{"uri": "pkcs11:model=PKCS%2315%20emulated;manufacturer=piv_II;
serial=0a35ba26b062b9c5;token=clevis;id=%02;object=Encryption%20Key?
module-path=/usr/lib64/libykcs11.so.2"}'
```

## Additional resources

- clevis-luks-bind(1)**, **clevis-encrypt-pkcs11(1)**, and **dracut.cmdline(7)** man pages on your system

## 10.10. REMOVING A CLEVIS PIN FROM A LUKS-ENCRYPTED VOLUME MANUALLY

Use the following procedure for manual removing the metadata created by the **clevis luks bind** command and also for wiping a key slot that contains passphrase added by Clevis.



### IMPORTANT

The recommended way to remove a Clevis pin from a LUKS-encrypted volume is through the **clevis luks unbind** command. The removal procedure using **clevis luks unbind** consists of only one step and works for both LUKS1 and LUKS2 volumes. The following example command removes the metadata created by the binding step and wipe the key slot **1** on the **/dev/sda2** device:

```
clevis luks unbind -d /dev/sda2 -s 1
```

## Prerequisites

- A LUKS-encrypted volume with a Clevis binding.

## Procedure

- Check which LUKS version the volume, for example **/dev/sda2**, is encrypted by and identify a slot and a token that is bound to Clevis:

```
cryptsetup luksDump /dev/sda2
LUKS header information
Version: 2
...
Keyslots:
 0: luks2
...
 1: luks2
 Key: 512 bits
 Priority: normal
 Cipher: aes-xts-plain64
...
 Tokens:
 0: clevis
 Keyslot: 1
...

```

In the previous example, the Clevis token is identified by **0** and the associated key slot is **1**.

2. In case of LUKS2 encryption, remove the token:

```
cryptsetup token remove --token-id 0 /dev/sda2
```

3. If your device is encrypted by LUKS1, which is indicated by the **Version: 1** string in the output of the **cryptsetup luksDump** command, perform this additional step with the **luksmeta wipe** command:

```
luksmeta wipe -d /dev/sda2 -s 1
```

4. Wipe the key slot containing the Clevis passphrase:

```
cryptsetup luksKillSlot /dev/sda2 1
```

## Additional resources

- **clevis-luks-unbind(1)**, **cryptsetup(8)**, and **luksmeta(8)** man pages on your system

## 10.11. CONFIGURING AUTOMATED ENROLLMENT OF LUKS-ENCRYPTED VOLUMES BY USING KICKSTART

Follow the steps in this procedure to configure an automated installation process that uses Clevis for the enrollment of LUKS-encrypted volumes.

### Procedure

1. Instruct Kickstart to partition the disk such that LUKS encryption has enabled for all mount points, other than **/boot**, with a temporary password. The password is temporary for this step of the enrollment process.

```
part /boot --fstype="xfs" --ondisk=vda --size=256
part / --fstype="xfs" --ondisk=vda --grow --encrypted --passphrase=temppass
```

Note that OSPP-compliant systems require a more complex configuration, for example:

```

part /boot --fstype="xfs" --ondisk=vda --size=256
part / --fstype="xfs" --ondisk=vda --size=2048 --encrypted --passphrase=temppass
part /var --fstype="xfs" --ondisk=vda --size=1024 --encrypted --passphrase=temppass
part /tmp --fstype="xfs" --ondisk=vda --size=1024 --encrypted --passphrase=temppass
part /home --fstype="xfs" --ondisk=vda --size=2048 --grow --encrypted --
passphrase=temppass
part /var/log --fstype="xfs" --ondisk=vda --size=1024 --encrypted --passphrase=temppass
part /var/log/audit --fstype="xfs" --ondisk=vda --size=1024 --encrypted --
passphrase=temppass

```

2. Install the related Clevis packages by listing them in the **%packages** section:

```

%packages
clevis-dracut
clevis-luks
clevis-systemd
%end

```

3. Optional: To ensure that you can unlock the encrypted volume manually when required, add a strong passphrase before you remove the temporary passphrase. For more information, see the Red Hat Knowledgebase solution [How to add a passphrase, key, or keyfile to an existing LUKS device](#).
4. Call **clevis luks bind** to perform binding in the **%post** section. Afterward, remove the temporary password:

```

%post
clevis luks bind -y -k - -d /dev/vda2 \
tang '{"url":"http://tang.srv"}' <<< "temppass"
cryptsetup luksRemoveKey /dev/vda2 <<< "temppass"
dracut -fv --regenerate-all
%end

```

If your configuration relies on a Tang pin that requires network during early boot or you use NBDE clients with static IP configurations, you have to modify the **dracut** command as described in [Configuring manual enrollment of LUKS-encrypted volumes](#).

Note that the **-y** option for the **clevis luks bind** command is available from RHEL 8.3. In RHEL 8.2 and older, replace **-y** by **-f** in the **clevis luks bind** command and download the advertisement from the Tang server:

```

%post
curl -sfg http://tang.srv/adv -o adv.jws
clevis luks bind -f -k - -d /dev/vda2 \
tang '{"url":"http://tang.srv","adv":"adv.jws"}' <<< "temppass"
cryptsetup luksRemoveKey /dev/vda2 <<< "temppass"
dracut -fv --regenerate-all
%end

```



**WARNING**

The **cryptsetup luksRemoveKey** command prevents any further administration of a LUKS2 device on which you apply it. You can recover a removed master key using the **dmsetup** command only for LUKS1 devices.

You can use an analogous procedure when using a TPM 2.0 policy instead of a Tang server.

**Additional resources**

- **clevis(1)**, **clevis-luks-bind(1)**, **cryptsetup(8)**, and **dmsetup(8)** man pages on your system
- [Automatically installing RHEL](#)

## 10.12. CONFIGURING AUTOMATED UNLOCKING OF A LUKS-ENCRYPTED REMOVABLE STORAGE DEVICE

You can set up an automated unlocking process of a LUKS-encrypted USB storage device.

**Procedure**

1. To automatically unlock a LUKS-encrypted removable storage device, such as a USB drive, install the **clevis-udisks2** package:

```
dnf install clevis-udisks2
```

2. Reboot the system, and then perform the binding step using the **clevis luks bind** command as described in [Configuring manual enrollment of LUKS-encrypted volumes](#), for example:

```
clevis luks bind -d /dev/sdb1 tang '{"url":"http://tang.srv"}'
```

3. The LUKS-encrypted removable device can be now unlocked automatically in your GNOME desktop session. The device bound to a Clevis policy can be also unlocked by the **clevis luks unlock** command:

```
clevis luks unlock -d /dev/sdb1
```

You can use an analogous procedure when using a TPM 2.0 policy instead of a Tang server.

**Additional resources**

- **clevis-luks-unlockers(7)** man page on your system

## 10.13. DEPLOYING HIGH-AVAILABILITY NBDE SYSTEMS

Tang provides two methods for building a high-availability deployment:

**Client redundancy (recommended)**

Clients should be configured with the ability to bind to multiple Tang servers. In this setup, each Tang server has its own keys and clients can decrypt by contacting a subset of these servers. Clevis already supports this workflow through its **sss** plug-in. Red Hat recommends this method for a high-availability deployment.

### Key sharing

For redundancy purposes, more than one instance of Tang can be deployed. To set up a second or any subsequent instance, install the **tang** packages and copy the key directory to the new host using **rsync** over **SSH**. Note that Red Hat does not recommend this method because sharing keys increases the risk of key compromise and requires additional automation infrastructure.

### High-available NBDE using Shamir's Secret Sharing

Shamir's Secret Sharing (SSS) is a cryptographic scheme that divides a secret into several unique parts. To reconstruct the secret, a number of parts is required. The number is called threshold and SSS is also referred to as a thresholding scheme.

Clevis provides an implementation of SSS. It creates a key and divides it into a number of pieces. Each piece is encrypted using another pin including even SSS recursively. Additionally, you define the threshold **t**. If an NBDE deployment decrypts at least **t** pieces, then it recovers the encryption key and the decryption process succeeds. When Clevis detects a smaller number of parts than specified in the threshold, it prints an error message.

#### Example 1: Redundancy with two Tang servers

The following command decrypts a LUKS-encrypted device when at least one of two Tang servers is available:

```
clevis luks bind -d /dev/sda1 sss '{"t":1,"pins":{"tang":[{"url":"http://tang1.srv"},
{"url":"http://tang2.srv"}]}'
```

The previous command used the following configuration scheme:

```
{
 "t":1,
 "pins":{
 "tang":[
 {
 "url":"http://tang1.srv"
 },
 {
 "url":"http://tang2.srv"
 }
]
 }
}
```

In this configuration, the SSS threshold **t** is set to **1** and the **clevis luks bind** command successfully reconstructs the secret if at least one from two listed **tang** servers is available.

#### Example 2: Shared secret on a Tang server and a TPM device

The following command successfully decrypts a LUKS-encrypted device when both the **tang** server and the **tpm2** device are available:

```
clevis luks bind -d /dev/sda1 sss '{"t":2,"pins":{"tang":[{"url":"http://tang1.srv"}], "tpm2":
{"pcr_ids":["0,7"]}}'
```

The configuration scheme with the SSS threshold 't' set to '2' is now:

```
{
 "t":2,
 "pins":{
 "tang":[
 {
 "url":"http://tang1.srv"
 }
],
 "tpm2":{
 "pcr_ids":"0,7"
 }
 }
}
```

#### Additional resources

- **tang(8)** (section **High Availability**), **clevis(1)** (section **Shamir's Secret Sharing**), and **clevis-encrypt-sss(1)** man pages on your system

## 10.14. DEPLOYMENT OF VIRTUAL MACHINES IN A NBDE NETWORK

The **clevis luks bind** command does not change the LUKS master key. This implies that if you create a LUKS-encrypted image for use in a virtual machine or cloud environment, all the instances that run this image share a master key. This is extremely insecure and should be avoided at all times.

This is not a limitation of Clevis but a design principle of LUKS. If your scenario requires having encrypted root volumes in a cloud, perform the installation process (usually using Kickstart) for each instance of Red Hat Enterprise Linux in the cloud as well. The images cannot be shared without also sharing a LUKS master key.

To deploy automated unlocking in a virtualized environment, use systems such as **lorax** or **virt-install** together with a Kickstart file (see [Configuring automated enrollment of LUKS-encrypted volumes using Kickstart](#)) or another automated provisioning tool to ensure that each encrypted VM has a unique master key.

#### Additional resources

- **clevis-luks-bind(1)** man page on your system

## 10.15. BUILDING AUTOMATICALLY-ENROLLABLE VM IMAGES FOR CLOUD ENVIRONMENTS BY USING NBDE

Deploying automatically-enrollable encrypted images in a cloud environment can provide a unique set of challenges. Like other virtualization environments, it is recommended to reduce the number of instances started from a single image to avoid sharing the LUKS master key.

Therefore, the best practice is to create customized images that are not shared in any public repository and that provide a base for the deployment of a limited amount of instances. The exact number of instances to create should be defined by deployment's security policies and based on the risk tolerance associated with the LUKS master key attack vector.

To build LUKS-enabled automated deployments, systems such as Lorax or virt-install together with a Kickstart file should be used to ensure master key uniqueness during the image building process.

Cloud environments enable two Tang server deployment options which we consider here. First, the Tang server can be deployed within the cloud environment itself. Second, the Tang server can be deployed outside of the cloud on independent infrastructure with a VPN link between the two infrastructures.

Deploying Tang natively in the cloud does allow for easy deployment. However, given that it shares infrastructure with the data persistence layer of ciphertext of other systems, it may be possible for both the Tang server's private key and the Clevis metadata to be stored on the same physical disk. Access to this physical disk permits a full compromise of the ciphertext data.



### IMPORTANT

Always maintain a physical separation between the location where the data is stored and the system where Tang is running. This separation between the cloud and the Tang server ensures that the Tang server's private key cannot be accidentally combined with the Clevis metadata. It also provides local control of the Tang server if the cloud infrastructure is at risk.

## 10.16. DEPLOYING TANG AS A CONTAINER

The **tang** container image provides Tang-server decryption capabilities for Clevis clients that run either in OpenShift Container Platform (OCP) clusters or in separate virtual machines.

### Prerequisites

- The **podman** package and its dependencies are installed on the system.
- You have logged in on the **registry.redhat.io** container catalog using the **podman login registry.redhat.io** command. See [Red Hat Container Registry Authentication](#) for more information.
- The Clevis client is installed on systems containing LUKS-encrypted volumes that you want to automatically unlock by using a Tang server.

### Procedure

1. Pull the **tang** container image from the **registry.redhat.io** registry:

```
podman pull registry.redhat.io/rhel9/tang
```

2. Run the container, specify its port, and specify the path to the Tang keys. The previous example runs the **tang** container, specifies the port `7500`, and indicates a path to the Tang keys of the **/var/db/tang** directory:

```
podman run -d -p 7500:7500 -v tang-keys:/var/db/tang --name tang
registry.redhat.io/rhel9/tang
```

Note that Tang uses port 80 by default but this may collide with other services such as the Apache HTTP server.

3. Optional: For increased security, rotate the Tang keys periodically. You can use the **tangd-rotate-keys** script, for example:

■

```
podman run --rm -v tang-keys:/var/db/tang registry.redhat.io/rhel9/tang tangd-rotate-keys -
v -d /var/db/tang
Rotated key 'rZAMKAseaXBe0rcKXL1hCClq-DY.jwk' -> '.rZAMKAseaXBe0rcKXL1hCClq-
DY.jwk'
Rotated key 'x1Alpc6WmnCU-CabD8_4q18vDuw.jwk' -> '.x1Alpc6WmnCU-
CabD8_4q18vDuw.jwk'
Created new key GrMMX_WfdqomIU_4RyjpcdlXb0E.jwk
Created new key _dTTfn17sZZqVAp80u3ygFDHtjk.jwk
Keys rotated successfully.
```

## Verification

- On a system that contains LUKS-encrypted volumes for automated unlocking by the presence of the Tang server, check that the Clevis client can encrypt and decrypt a plain-text message using Tang:

```
echo test | clevis encrypt tang '{"url":"http://localhost:7500"}' | clevis decrypt
The advertisement contains the following signing keys:

x1Alpc6WmnCU-CabD8_4q18vDuw

Do you wish to trust these keys? [ynYN] y
test
```

The previous example command shows the **test** string at the end of its output when a Tang server is available on the *localhost* URL and communicates through port *7500*.

## Additional resources

- podman(1)**, **clevis(1)**, and **tang(8)** man pages on your system

## 10.17. CONFIGURING NBDE BY USING RHEL SYSTEM ROLES

You can use the **nbde\_client** and **nbde\_server** RHEL system roles for automated deployments of Policy-Based Decryption (PBD) solutions using Clevis and Tang. The **rhel-system-roles** package contains these system roles, the related examples, and also the reference documentation.

### 10.17.1. Using the **nbde\_server** RHEL system role for setting up multiple Tang servers

By using the **nbde\_server** system role, you can deploy and manage a Tang server as part of an automated disk encryption solution. This role supports the following features:

- Rotating Tang keys
- Deploying and backing up Tang keys

## Prerequisites

- [You have prepared the control node and the managed nodes](#)
- You are logged in to the control node as a user who can run playbooks on the managed nodes.
- The account you use to connect to the managed nodes has **sudo** permissions on them.

## Procedure

1. Create a playbook file, for example `~/playbook.yml`, with the following content:

```

- name: Deploy a Tang server
 hosts: tang.server.example.com
 tasks:
 - name: Install and configure periodic key rotation
 ansible.builtin.include_role:
 name: redhat.rhel_system_roles.nbde_server
 vars:
 nbde_server_rotate_keys: yes
 nbde_server_manage_firewall: true
 nbde_server_manage_selinux: true
```

This example playbook ensures deploying of your Tang server and a key rotation.

The settings specified in the example playbook include the following:

### **nbde\_server\_manage\_firewall: true**

Use the **firewall** system role to manage ports used by the **nbde\_server** role.

### **nbde\_server\_manage\_selinux: true**

Use the **selinux** system role to manage ports used by the **nbde\_server** role.

For details about all variables used in the playbook, see the `/usr/share/ansible/roles/rhel-system-roles.nbde_server/README.md` file on the control node.

2. Validate the playbook syntax:

```
$ ansible-playbook --syntax-check ~/playbook.yml
```

Note that this command only validates the syntax and does not protect against a wrong but valid configuration.

3. Run the playbook:

```
$ ansible-playbook ~/playbook.yml
```

## Verification

- On your NBDE client, verify that your Tang server works correctly by using the following command. The command must return the identical message you pass for encryption and decryption:

```
ansible managed-node-01.example.com -m command -a 'echo test | clevis encrypt tang
{"url":"<tang.server.example.com>"}' -y | clevis decrypt'
test
```

## Additional resources

- `/usr/share/ansible/roles/rhel-system-roles.nbde_server/README.md` file
- `/usr/share/doc/rhel-system-roles/nbde_server/` directory

### 10.17.2. Setting up Clevis clients with DHCP by using the `nbde_client` RHEL system role

The **`nbde_client`** system role enables you to deploy multiple Clevis clients in an automated way.

This role supports binding a LUKS-encrypted volume to one or more Network-Bound (NBDE) servers - Tang servers. You can either preserve the existing volume encryption with a passphrase or remove it. After removing the passphrase, you can unlock the volume only using NBDE. This is useful when a volume is initially encrypted using a temporary key or password that you should remove after you provision the system.

If you provide both a passphrase and a key file, the role uses what you have provided first. If it does not find any of these valid, it attempts to retrieve a passphrase from an existing binding.

Policy-Based Decryption (PBD) defines a binding as a mapping of a device to a slot. This means that you can have multiple bindings for the same device. The default slot is slot 1.



#### NOTE

The **`nbde_client`** system role supports only Tang bindings. Therefore, you cannot use it for TPM2 bindings.

#### Prerequisites

- [You have prepared the control node and the managed nodes](#)
- You are logged in to the control node as a user who can run playbooks on the managed nodes.
- The account you use to connect to the managed nodes has **`sudo`** permissions on them.
- A volume that is already encrypted by using LUKS.

#### Procedure

1. Create a playbook file, for example `~/playbook.yml`, with the following content:

```

- name: Configure clients for unlocking of encrypted volumes by Tang servers
 hosts: managed-node-01.example.com
 tasks:
 - name: Create NBDE client bindings
 ansible.builtin.include_role:
 name: redhat.rhel_system_roles.nbde_client
 vars:
 nbde_client_bindings:
 - device: /dev/rhel/root
 encryption_key_src: /etc/luks/keyfile
 nbde_client_early_boot: true
 state: present
 servers:
 - http://server1.example.com
 - http://server2.example.com
 - device: /dev/rhel/swap
 encryption_key_src: /etc/luks/keyfile
```

```
servers:
- http://server1.example.com
- http://server2.example.com
```

This example playbook configures Clevis clients for automated unlocking of two LUKS-encrypted volumes when at least one of two Tang servers is available.

The settings specified in the example playbook include the following:

### **state: present**

The values of **state** indicate the configuration after you run the playbook. Use the **present** value for either creating a new binding or updating an existing one. Contrary to a **clevis luks bind** command, you can use **state: present** also for overwriting an existing binding in its device slot. The **absent** value removes a specified binding.

### **nbde\_client\_early\_boot: true**

The **nbde\_client** role ensures that networking for a Tang pin is available during early boot by default. If your scenario requires to disable this feature, add the **nbde\_client\_early\_boot: false** variable to your playbook.

For details about all variables used in the playbook, see the `/usr/share/ansible/roles/rhel-system-roles.nbde_client/README.md` file on the control node.

2. Validate the playbook syntax:

```
$ ansible-playbook --syntax-check ~/playbook.yml
```

Note that this command only validates the syntax and does not protect against a wrong but valid configuration.

3. Run the playbook:

```
$ ansible-playbook ~/playbook.yml
```

## Verification

1. On your NBDE client, check that the encrypted volume that should be automatically unlocked by your Tang servers contain the corresponding information in its LUKS pins:

```
ansible managed-node-01.example.com -m command -a 'clevis luks list -d /dev/rhel/root'
1: tang '{"url": "<http://server1.example.com/>"}'
2: tang '{"url": "<http://server2.example.com/>"}'
```

2. If you do not use the **nbde\_client\_early\_boot: false** variable, verify that the bindings are available for the early boot, for example:

```
ansible managed-node-01.example.com -m command -a 'lsinitrd | grep clevis-luks'
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root 48 Jan 4 02:56
etc/systemd/system/cryptsetup.target.wants/clevis-luks-askpass.path ->
/usr/lib/systemd/system/clevis-luks-askpass.path
...
```

## Additional resources



- `/usr/share/ansible/roles/rhel-system-roles.nbde_client/README.md` file
- `/usr/share/doc/rhel-system-roles/nbde_client/` directory

### 10.17.3. Setting up static-IP Clevis clients by using the `nbde_client` RHEL system role

The `nbde_client` RHEL system role supports only scenarios with Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP). On an NBDE client with static IP configuration, you must pass your network configuration as a kernel boot parameter.

Typically, administrators want to reuse a playbook and not maintain individual playbooks for each host to which Ansible assigns static IP addresses during early boot. In this case, you can use variables in the playbook and provide the settings in an external file. As a result, you need only one playbook and one file with the settings.

#### Prerequisites

- [You have prepared the control node and the managed nodes](#)
- You are logged in to the control node as a user who can run playbooks on the managed nodes.
- The account you use to connect to the managed nodes has **sudo** permissions on them.
- A volume that is already encrypted by using LUKS.

#### Procedure

1. Create a file with the network settings of your hosts, for example, **static-ip-settings-clients.yml**, and add the values you want to dynamically assign to the hosts:

```
clients:
 managed-node-01.example.com:
 ip_v4: 192.0.2.1
 gateway_v4: 192.0.2.254
 netmask_v4: 255.255.255.0
 interface: enp1s0
 managed-node-02.example.com:
 ip_v4: 192.0.2.2
 gateway_v4: 192.0.2.254
 netmask_v4: 255.255.255.0
 interface: enp1s0
```

2. Create a playbook file, for example, `~/playbook.yml`, with the following content:

```
- name: Configure clients for unlocking of encrypted volumes by Tang servers
 hosts: managed-node-01.example.com,managed-node-02.example.com
 vars_files:
 - ~/static-ip-settings-clients.yml
 tasks:
 - name: Create NBDE client bindings
 ansible.builtin.include_role:
 name: redhat.rhel_system_roles.network
 vars:
 nbde_client_bindings:
 - device: /dev/rhel/root
```

```

 encryption_key_src: /etc/luks/keyfile
 servers:
 - http://server1.example.com
 - http://server2.example.com
 - device: /dev/rhel/swap
 encryption_key_src: /etc/luks/keyfile
 servers:
 - http://server1.example.com
 - http://server2.example.com

- name: Configure a Clevis client with static IP address during early boot
 ansible.builtin.include_role:
 name: redhat.rhel_system_roles.bootloader
 vars:
 bootloader_settings:
 - kernel: ALL
 options:
 - name: ip
 value: "{{ clients[inventory_hostname]['ip_v4'] }}::{{ clients[inventory_hostname]
['gateway_v4'] }}::{{ clients[inventory_hostname]['netmask_v4'] }}::{{
clients[inventory_hostname]['interface'] }}:none"

```

This playbook reads certain values dynamically for each host listed in the `~/static-ip-settings-clients.yml` file.

For details about all variables used in the playbook, see the `/usr/share/ansible/roles/rhel-system-roles.network/README.md` file on the control node.

3. Validate the playbook syntax:

```
$ ansible-playbook --syntax-check ~/playbook.yml
```

Note that this command only validates the syntax and does not protect against a wrong but valid configuration.

4. Run the playbook:

```
$ ansible-playbook ~/playbook.yml
```

#### Additional resources

- `/usr/share/ansible/roles/rhel-system-roles.nbde_client/README.md` file
- `/usr/share/doc/rhel-system-roles/nbde_client/` directory
- [Looking forward to Linux network configuration in the initial ramdisk \(initrd\)](#) (Red Hat Enable Sysadmin)

## CHAPTER 11. AUDITING THE SYSTEM

Although Audit does not provide additional security to your system, you can use it to discover violations of security policies on your system. Then, you can prevent future such violations by configuring additional security measures such as SELinux.

### 11.1. LINUX AUDIT

The Linux Audit system provides a way to track security-relevant information about your system. Based on pre-configured rules, Audit generates log entries to record as much information about the events that are happening on your system as possible. This information is crucial for mission-critical environments to determine the violator of the security policy and the actions they performed.

The following list summarizes some of the information that Audit is capable of recording in its log files:

- Date and time, type, and outcome of an event
- Sensitivity labels of subjects and objects
- Association of an event with the identity of the user who triggered the event
- All modifications to Audit configuration and attempts to access Audit log files
- All uses of authentication mechanisms, such as SSH, Kerberos, and others
- Changes to any trusted database, such as **/etc/passwd**
- Attempts to import or export information into or from the system
- Include or exclude events based on user identity, subject and object labels, and other attributes

The use of the Audit system is also a requirement for a number of security-related certifications. Audit is designed to meet or exceed the requirements of the following certifications or compliance guides:

- Controlled Access Protection Profile (CAPP)
- Labeled Security Protection Profile (LSPP)
- Rule Set Base Access Control (RSBAC)
- National Industrial Security Program Operating Manual (NISPOM)
- Federal Information Security Management Act (FISMA)
- Payment Card Industry - Data Security Standard (PCI-DSS)
- Security Technical Implementation Guides (STIG)

Audit has also been evaluated by National Information Assurance Partnership (NIAP) and Best Security Industries (BSI).

#### Use Cases

##### Watching file access

Audit can track whether a file or a directory has been accessed, modified, executed, or the file's attributes have been changed. This is useful, for example, to detect access to important files and have an Audit trail available in case one of these files is corrupted.

### Monitoring system calls

Audit can be configured to generate a log entry every time a particular system call is used. This can be used, for example, to track changes to the system time by monitoring the **settimeofday**, **clock\_adjtime**, and other time-related system calls.

### Recording commands run by a user

Audit can track whether a file has been executed, so rules can be defined to record every execution of a particular command. For example, a rule can be defined for every executable in the **/bin** directory. The resulting log entries can then be searched by user ID to generate an audit trail of executed commands per user.

### Recording execution of system pathnames

Aside from watching file access which translates a path to an inode at rule invocation, Audit can now watch the execution of a path even if it does not exist at rule invocation, or if the file is replaced after rule invocation. This allows rules to continue to work after upgrading a program executable or before it is even installed.

### Recording security events

The **pam\_faillock** authentication module is capable of recording failed login attempts. Audit can be set up to record failed login attempts as well and provides additional information about the user who attempted to log in.

### Searching for events

Audit provides the **ausearch** utility, which can be used to filter the log entries and provide a complete audit trail based on several conditions.

### Running summary reports

The **aureport** utility can be used to generate, among other things, daily reports of recorded events. A system administrator can then analyze these reports and investigate suspicious activity further.

### Monitoring network access

The **nftables**, **iptables**, and **ebtables** utilities can be configured to trigger Audit events, allowing system administrators to monitor network access.



#### NOTE

System performance may be affected depending on the amount of information that is collected by Audit.

## 11.2. AUDIT SYSTEM ARCHITECTURE

The Audit system consists of two main parts: the user-space applications and utilities, and the kernel-side system call processing. The kernel component receives system calls from user-space applications and filters them through one of the following filters: **user**, **task**, **fstype**, or **exit**.

After a system call passes the **exclude** filter, it is sent through one of the aforementioned filters, which, based on the Audit rule configuration, sends it to the Audit daemon for further processing.

The user-space Audit daemon collects the information from the kernel and creates entries in a log file. Other Audit user-space utilities interact with the Audit daemon, the kernel Audit component, or the Audit log files:

- The **auditctl** Audit control utility interacts with the kernel Audit component to manage rules and to control many settings and parameters of the event generation process.

- The remaining Audit utilities take the contents of the Audit log files as input and generate output based on user's requirements. For example, the **aureport** utility generates a report of all recorded events.

In RHEL 9, the Audit dispatcher daemon (**audisp**) functionality is integrated in the Audit daemon (**auditd**). Configuration files of plugins for the interaction of real-time analytical programs with Audit events are located in the **/etc/audit/plugins.d/** directory by default.

## 11.3. CONFIGURING AUDITD FOR A SECURE ENVIRONMENT

The default **auditd** configuration should be suitable for most environments. However, if your environment must meet strict security policies, you can change the following settings for the Audit daemon configuration in the **/etc/audit/auditd.conf** file:

### log\_file

The directory that holds the Audit log files (usually **/var/log/audit/**) should reside on a separate mount point. This prevents other processes from consuming space in this directory and provides accurate detection of the remaining space for the Audit daemon.

### max\_log\_file

Specifies the maximum size of a single Audit log file, must be set to make full use of the available space on the partition that holds the Audit log files. The **max\_log\_file** parameter specifies the maximum file size in megabytes. The value given must be numeric.

### max\_log\_file\_action

Decides what action is taken once the limit set in **max\_log\_file** is reached, should be set to **keep\_logs** to prevent Audit log files from being overwritten.

### space\_left

Specifies the amount of free space left on the disk for which an action that is set in the **space\_left\_action** parameter is triggered. Must be set to a number that gives the administrator enough time to respond and free up disk space. The **space\_left** value depends on the rate at which the Audit log files are generated. If the value of **space\_left** is specified as a whole number, it is interpreted as an absolute size in megabytes (MiB). If the value is specified as a number between 1 and 99 followed by a percentage sign (for example, 5%), the Audit daemon calculates the absolute size in megabytes based on the size of the file system containing **log\_file**.

### space\_left\_action

It is recommended to set the **space\_left\_action** parameter to **email** or **exec** with an appropriate notification method.

### admin\_space\_left

Specifies the absolute minimum amount of free space for which an action that is set in the **admin\_space\_left\_action** parameter is triggered, must be set to a value that leaves enough space to log actions performed by the administrator. The numeric value for this parameter should be lower than the number for **space\_left**. You can also append a percent sign (for example, 1%) to the number to have the audit daemon calculate the number based on the disk partition size.

### admin\_space\_left\_action

Should be set to **single** to put the system into single-user mode and allow the administrator to free up some disk space.

### disk\_full\_action

Specifies an action that is triggered when no free space is available on the partition that holds the Audit log files, must be set to **halt** or **single**. This ensures that the system is either shut down or operating in single-user mode when Audit can no longer log events.

### disk\_error\_action

Specifies an action that is triggered in case an error is detected on the partition that holds the Audit log files, must be set to **syslog**, **single**, or **halt**, depending on your local security policies regarding the handling of hardware malfunctions.

### flush

Should be set to **incremental\_async**. It works in combination with the **freq** parameter, which determines how many records can be sent to the disk before forcing a hard synchronization with the hard drive. The **freq** parameter should be set to **100**. These parameters assure that Audit event data is synchronized with the log files on the disk while keeping good performance for bursts of activity.

The remaining configuration options should be set according to your local security policy.

## 11.4. STARTING AND CONTROLLING AUDITD

After **auditd** is configured, start the service to collect Audit information and store it in the log files. Use the following command as the root user to start **auditd**:

```
service auditd start
```

To configure **auditd** to start at boot time:

```
systemctl enable auditd
```

You can temporarily disable **auditd** with the **# auditctl -e 0** command and re-enable it with **# auditctl -e 1**.

You can perform other actions on **auditd** by using the **service auditd <action>** command, where **<action>** can be one of the following:

### stop

Stops **auditd**.

### restart

Restarts **auditd**.

### reload or force-reload

Reloads the configuration of **auditd** from the **/etc/audit/auditd.conf** file.

### rotate

Rotates the log files in the **/var/log/audit/** directory.

### resume

Resumes logging of Audit events after it has been previously suspended, for example, when there is not enough free space on the disk partition that holds the Audit log files.

### condrestart or try-restart

Restarts **auditd** only if it is already running.

### status

Displays the running status of **auditd**.



### NOTE

The **service** command is the only way to correctly interact with the **auditd** daemon. You need to use the **service** command so that the **audit** value is properly recorded. You can use the **systemctl** command only for two actions: **enable** and **status**.

## 11.5. UNDERSTANDING AUDIT LOG FILES

By default, the Audit system stores log entries in the `/var/log/audit/audit.log` file; if log rotation is enabled, rotated **audit.log** files are stored in the same directory.

Add the following Audit rule to log every attempt to read or modify the `/etc/ssh/sshd_config` file:

```
auditctl -w /etc/ssh/sshd_config -p warx -k sshd_config
```

If the **auditd** daemon is running, for example, using the following command creates a new event in the Audit log file:

```
$ cat /etc/ssh/sshd_config
```

This event in the **audit.log** file looks as follows:

```
type=SYSCALL msg=audit(1364481363.243:24287): arch=c000003e syscall=2 success=no exit=-13
a0=7fffd19c5592 a1=0 a2=7fffd19c4b50 a3=a items=1 ppid=2686 pid=3538 auid=1000 uid=1000
gid=1000 euid=1000 suid=1000 fsuid=1000 egid=1000 sgid=1000 fsgid=1000 tty=pts0 ses=1
comm="cat" exe="/bin/cat" subj=unconfined_u:unconfined_r:unconfined_t:s0-s0:c0.c1023
key="sshd_config"
type=CWD msg=audit(1364481363.243:24287): cwd="/home/shadowman"
type=PATH msg=audit(1364481363.243:24287): item=0 name="/etc/ssh/sshd_config" inode=409248
dev=fd:00 mode=0100600 ouid=0 ogid=0 rdev=00:00 obj=system_u:object_r:etc_t:s0
nametype=NORMAL cap_fp=none cap_fi=none cap_fe=0 cap_fver=0
type=PROCTITLE msg=audit(1364481363.243:24287) :
proctitle=636174002F6574632F7373682F737368645F636F6E666967
```

The above event consists of four records, which share the same time stamp and serial number. Records always start with the **type=** keyword. Each record consists of several **name=value** pairs separated by a white space or a comma. A detailed analysis of the above event follows:

### First Record

#### type=SYSCALL

The **type** field contains the type of the record. In this example, the **SYSCALL** value specifies that this record was triggered by a system call to the kernel.

#### msg=audit(1364481363.243:24287):

The **msg** field records:

- A time stamp and a unique ID of the record in the form **audit(time\_stamp:ID)**. Multiple records can share the same time stamp and ID if they were generated as part of the same Audit event. The time stamp is using the Unix time format – seconds since 00:00:00 UTC on 1 January 1970.
- Various event-specific **name=value** pairs provided by the kernel or user-space applications.

#### arch=c000003e

The **arch** field contains information about the CPU architecture of the system. The value, **c000003e**, is encoded in hexadecimal notation. When searching Audit records with the **ausearch** command, use the **-i** or **--interpret** option to automatically convert hexadecimal values into their human-readable equivalents. The **c000003e** value is interpreted as **x86\_64**.

**syscall=2**

The **syscall** field records the type of the system call that was sent to the kernel. The value, **2**, can be matched with its human-readable equivalent in the `/usr/include/asm/unistd_64.h` file. In this case, **2** is the **open** system call. Note that the **ausyscall** utility allows you to convert system call numbers to their human-readable equivalents. Use the **ausyscall --dump** command to display a listing of all system calls along with their numbers. For more information, see the **ausyscall(8)** man page.

**success=no**

The **success** field records whether the system call recorded in that particular event succeeded or failed. In this case, the call did not succeed.

**exit=-13**

The **exit** field contains a value that specifies the exit code returned by the system call. This value varies for a different system call. You can interpret the value to its human-readable equivalent with the following command:

```
ausearch --interpret --exit -13
```

Note that the previous example assumes that your Audit log contains an event that failed with exit code **-13**.

**a0=7fffd19c5592, a1=0, a2=7fffd19c5592, a3=a**

The **a0** to **a3** fields record the first four arguments, encoded in hexadecimal notation, of the system call in this event. These arguments depend on the system call that is used; they can be interpreted by the **ausearch** utility.

**items=1**

The **items** field contains the number of PATH auxiliary records that follow the syscall record.

**ppid=2686**

The **ppid** field records the Parent Process ID (PPID). In this case, **2686** was the PPID of the parent process such as **bash**.

**pid=3538**

The **pid** field records the Process ID (PID). In this case, **3538** was the PID of the **cat** process.

**audit=1000**

The **audit** field records the Audit user ID, that is the loginuid. This ID is assigned to a user upon login and is inherited by every process even when the user's identity changes, for example, by switching user accounts with the **su - john** command.

**uid=1000**

The **uid** field records the user ID of the user who started the analyzed process. The user ID can be interpreted into user names with the following command: **ausearch -i --uid UID**.

**gid=1000**

The **gid** field records the group ID of the user who started the analyzed process.

**euid=1000**

The **euid** field records the effective user ID of the user who started the analyzed process.

**suid=1000**

The **suid** field records the set user ID of the user who started the analyzed process.

**fsuid=1000**

The **fsuid** field records the file system user ID of the user who started the analyzed process.

**egid=1000**



The **egid** field records the effective group ID of the user who started the analyzed process.

**sgid=1000**

The **sgid** field records the set group ID of the user who started the analyzed process.

**fsgid=1000**

The **fsgid** field records the file system group ID of the user who started the analyzed process.

**tty=pts0**

The **tty** field records the terminal from which the analyzed process was invoked.

**ses=1**

The **ses** field records the session ID of the session from which the analyzed process was invoked.

**comm="cat"**

The **comm** field records the command-line name of the command that was used to invoke the analyzed process. In this case, the **cat** command was used to trigger this Audit event.

**exe="/bin/cat"**

The **exe** field records the path to the executable that was used to invoke the analyzed process.

**subj=unconfined\_u:unconfined\_r:unconfined\_t:s0-s0:c0.c1023**

The **subj** field records the SELinux context with which the analyzed process was labeled at the time of execution.

**key="sshd\_config"**

The **key** field records the administrator-defined string associated with the rule that generated this event in the Audit log.

## Second Record

**type=CWD**

In the second record, the **type** field value is **CWD** - current working directory. This type is used to record the working directory from which the process that invoked the system call specified in the first record was executed.

The purpose of this record is to record the current process's location in case a relative path winds up being captured in the associated PATH record. This way the absolute path can be reconstructed.

**msg=audit(1364481363.243:24287)**

The **msg** field holds the same time stamp and ID value as the value in the first record. The time stamp is using the Unix time format - seconds since 00:00:00 UTC on 1 January 1970.

**cwd="/home/user\_name"**

The **cwd** field contains the path to the directory in which the system call was invoked.

## Third Record

**type=PATH**

In the third record, the **type** field value is **PATH**. An Audit event contains a **PATH**-type record for every path that is passed to the system call as an argument. In this Audit event, only one path (**/etc/ssh/sshd\_config**) was used as an argument.

**msg=audit(1364481363.243:24287):**

The **msg** field holds the same time stamp and ID value as the value in the first and second record.

**item=0**

The **item** field indicates which item, of the total number of items referenced in the **SYSCALL** type record, the current record is. This number is zero-based; a value of **0** means it is the first item.

**name="/etc/ssh/sshd\_config"**

The **name** field records the path of the file or directory that was passed to the system call as an argument. In this case, it was the **/etc/ssh/sshd\_config** file.

**inode=409248**

The **inode** field contains the inode number associated with the file or directory recorded in this event. The following command displays the file or directory that is associated with the **409248** inode number:

```
find / -inum 409248 -print
/etc/ssh/sshd_config
```

**dev=fd:00**

The **dev** field specifies the minor and major ID of the device that contains the file or directory recorded in this event. In this case, the value represents the **/dev/fd/0** device.

**mode=0100600**

The **mode** field records the file or directory permissions, encoded in numerical notation as returned by the **stat** command in the **st\_mode** field. See the **stat(2)** man page for more information. In this case, **0100600** can be interpreted as **-rw-----**, meaning that only the root user has read and write permissions to the **/etc/ssh/sshd\_config** file.

**oid=0**

The **oid** field records the object owner's user ID.

**ogid=0**

The **ogid** field records the object owner's group ID.

**rdev=00:00**

The **rdev** field contains a recorded device identifier for special files only. In this case, it is not used as the recorded file is a regular file.

**obj=system\_u:object\_r:etc\_t:s0**

The **obj** field records the SELinux context with which the recorded file or directory was labeled at the time of execution.

**nametype=NORMAL**

The **nametype** field records the intent of each path record's operation in the context of a given syscall.

**cap\_fp=none**

The **cap\_fp** field records data related to the setting of a permitted file system-based capability of the file or directory object.

**cap\_fi=none**

The **cap\_fi** field records data related to the setting of an inherited file system-based capability of the file or directory object.

**cap\_fe=0**

The **cap\_fe** field records the setting of the effective bit of the file system-based capability of the file or directory object.

**cap\_fver=0**

The **cap\_fver** field records the version of the file system-based capability of the file or directory object.

## Fourth Record

### type=PROCTITLE

The **type** field contains the type of the record. In this example, the **PROCTITLE** value specifies that this record gives the full command-line that triggered this Audit event, triggered by a system call to the kernel.

### proctitle=636174002F6574632F7373682F737368645F636F6E666967

The **proctitle** field records the full command-line of the command that was used to invoke the analyzed process. The field is encoded in hexadecimal notation to not allow the user to influence the Audit log parser. The text decodes to the command that triggered this Audit event. When searching Audit records with the **ausearch** command, use the **-i** or **--interpret** option to automatically convert hexadecimal values into their human-readable equivalents. The

**636174002F6574632F7373682F737368645F636F6E666967** value is interpreted as **cat /etc/ssh/sshd\_config**.

## 11.6. USING AUDITCTL FOR DEFINING AND EXECUTING AUDIT RULES

The Audit system operates on a set of rules that define what is captured in the log files. Audit rules can be set either on the command line using the **auditctl** utility or in the **/etc/audit/rules.d/** directory.

The **auditctl** command enables you to control the basic functionality of the Audit system and to define rules that decide which Audit events are logged.

### File-system rules examples

1. To define a rule that logs all write access to, and every attribute change of, the **/etc/passwd** file:

```
auditctl -w /etc/passwd -p wa -k passwd_changes
```

2. To define a rule that logs all write access to, and every attribute change of, all the files in the **/etc/selinux/** directory:

```
auditctl -w /etc/selinux/ -p wa -k selinux_changes
```

### System-call rules examples

1. To define a rule that creates a log entry every time the **adjtimex** or **settimeofday** system calls are used by a program, and the system uses the 64-bit architecture:

```
auditctl -a always,exit -F arch=b64 -S adjtimex -S settimeofday -k time_change
```

2. To define a rule that creates a log entry every time a file is deleted or renamed by a system user whose ID is 1000 or larger:

```
auditctl -a always,exit -S unlink -S unlinkat -S rename -S renameat -F auid>=1000 -F auid!=4294967295 -k delete
```

Note that the **-F auid!=4294967295** option is used to exclude users whose login UID is not set.

### Executable-file rules

To define a rule that logs all execution of the **/bin/id** program, execute the following command:

```
auditctl -a always,exit -F exe=/bin/id -F arch=b64 -S execve -k execution_bin_id
```

### Additional resources

- **auditctl(8)** man page on your system

## 11.7. DEFINING PERSISTENT AUDIT RULES

To define Audit rules that are persistent across reboots, you must either directly include them in the **/etc/audit/rules.d/audit.rules** file or use the **augenrules** program that reads rules located in the **/etc/audit/rules.d/** directory.

Note that the **/etc/audit/audit.rules** file is generated whenever the **auditd** service starts. Files in **/etc/audit/rules.d/** use the same **auditctl** command-line syntax to specify the rules. Empty lines and text following a hash sign (**#**) are ignored.

Furthermore, you can use the **auditctl** command to read rules from a specified file using the **-R** option, for example:

```
auditctl -R /usr/share/audit/sample-rules/30-stig.rules
```

## 11.8. PRE-CONFIGURED AUDIT RULES FILES FOR COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS

To configure Audit for compliance with a specific certification standard, such as OSPP, PCI DSS, or STIG, you can use the set of pre-configured rules files installed with the **audit** package as a starting point. The sample rules are located in the **/usr/share/audit/sample-rules** directory.



### WARNING

The Audit sample rules in the **sample-rules** directory are not exhaustive nor up to date because security standards are dynamic and subject to change. These rules are provided only to demonstrate how Audit rules can be structured and written. They do not ensure immediate compliance with the latest security standards. To bring your system into compliance with the latest security standards according to specific security guidelines, use the [SCAP-based security compliance tools](#).

### 30-nispom.rules

Audit rule configuration that meets the requirements specified in the Information System Security chapter of the National Industrial Security Program Operating Manual.

### 30-ospp-v42\*.rules

Audit rule configuration that meets the requirements defined in the OSPP (Protection Profile for General Purpose Operating Systems) profile version 4.2.

### 30-pci-dss-v31.rules

Audit rule configuration that meets the requirements set by Payment Card Industry Data Security Standard (PCI DSS) v3.1.

### 30-stig.rules

Audit rule configuration that meets the requirements set by Security Technical Implementation Guides (STIG).

To use these configuration files, copy them to the `/etc/audit/rules.d/` directory and use the **augenrules** **--load** command, for example:

```
cd /usr/share/audit/sample-rules/
cp 10-base-config.rules 30-stig.rules 31-privileged.rules 99-finalize.rules /etc/audit/rules.d/
augenrules --load
```

You can order Audit rules using a numbering scheme. See the `/usr/share/audit/sample-rules/README-rules` file for more information.

### Additional resources

- **audit.rules(7)** man page on your system

## 11.9. USING AUGENRULES TO DEFINE PERSISTENT RULES

The **augenrules** script reads rules located in the `/etc/audit/rules.d/` directory and compiles them into an **audit.rules** file. This script processes all files that end with **.rules** in a specific order based on their natural sort order. The files in this directory are organized into groups with the following meanings:

10

Kernel and auditctl configuration

20

Rules that could match general rules but you want a different match

30

Main rules

40

Optional rules

50

Server-specific rules

70

System local rules

90

Finalize (immutable)

The rules are not meant to be used all at once. They are pieces of a policy that should be thought out and individual files copied to `/etc/audit/rules.d/`. For example, to set a system up in the STIG configuration, copy rules **10-base-config**, **30-stig**, **31-privileged**, and **99-finalize**.

Once you have the rules in the `/etc/audit/rules.d/` directory, load them by running the **augenrules** script with the **--load** directive:

```
augenrules --load
/sbin/augenrules: No change
No rules
enabled 1
```

```
failure 1
pid 742
rate_limit 0
...
```

#### Additional resources

- **audit.rules(8)** and **augenrules(8)** man pages on your system

## 11.10. DISABLING AUGENRULES

Use the following steps to disable the **augenrules** utility. This switches Audit to use rules defined in the **/etc/audit/audit.rules** file.

#### Procedure

1. Copy the **/usr/lib/systemd/system/auditd.service** file to the **/etc/systemd/system/** directory:

```
cp -f /usr/lib/systemd/system/auditd.service /etc/systemd/system/
```

2. Edit the **/etc/systemd/system/auditd.service** file in a text editor of your choice, for example:

```
vi /etc/systemd/system/auditd.service
```

3. Comment out the line containing **augenrules**, and uncomment the line containing the **auditctl -R** command:

```
#ExecStartPost=/sbin/augenrules --load
ExecStartPost=/sbin/auditctl -R /etc/audit/audit.rules
```

4. Reload the **systemd** daemon to fetch changes in the **auditd.service** file:

```
systemctl daemon-reload
```

5. Restart the **auditd** service:

```
service auditd restart
```

#### Additional resources

- **augenrules(8)** and **audit.rules(8)** man pages on your system
- [Auditd service restart overrides changes made to /etc/audit/audit.rules](#) (Red Hat Knowledgebase)

## 11.11. SETTING UP AUDIT TO MONITOR SOFTWARE UPDATES

You can use the pre-configured rule **44-installers.rules** to configure Audit to monitor the following utilities that install software:

- **dnf** [2]

- **yum**
- **pip**
- **npm**
- **cpan**
- **gem**
- **luarocks**

To monitor the **rpm** utility, install the **rpm-plugin-audit** package. Audit will then generate **SOFTWARE\_UPDATE** events when it installs or updates a package. You can list these events by entering **ausearch -m SOFTWARE\_UPDATE** on the command line.



## NOTE

Pre-configured rule files cannot be used on systems with the **ppc64le** and **aarch64** architectures.

## Prerequisites

- **auditd** is configured in accordance with the settings provided in [Configuring auditd for a secure environment](#).

## Procedure

1. Copy the pre-configured rule file **44-installers.rules** from the **/usr/share/audit/sample-rules/** directory to the **/etc/audit/rules.d/** directory:

```
cp /usr/share/audit/sample-rules/44-installers.rules /etc/audit/rules.d/
```

2. Load the audit rules:

```
augenrules --load
```

## Verification

1. List the loaded rules:

```
auditctl -l
-p x-w /usr/bin/dnf-3 -k software-installer
-p x-w /usr/bin/yum -k software-installer
-p x-w /usr/bin/pip -k software-installer
-p x-w /usr/bin/npm -k software-installer
-p x-w /usr/bin/cpan -k software-installer
-p x-w /usr/bin/gem -k software-installer
-p x-w /usr/bin/luarocks -k software-installer
```

2. Perform an installation, for example:

```
dnf reinstall -y vim-enhanced
```

3. Search the Audit log for recent installation events, for example:

```
ausearch -ts recent -k software-installer
time->Thu Dec 16 10:33:46 2021
type=PROCTITLE msg=audit(1639668826.074:298):
proctitle=2F7573722F6C6962657865632F706C6174666F726D2D707974686F6E002F75737
22F62696E2F646E66007265696E7374616C6C002D790076696D2D656E68616E636564
type=PATH msg=audit(1639668826.074:298): item=2 name="/lib64/ld-linux-x86-64.so.2"
inode=10092 dev=fd:01 mode=0100755 ouid=0 ogid=0 rdev=00:00
obj=system_u:object_r:ld_so_t:s0 nametype=NORMAL cap_fp=0 cap_fi=0 cap_fe=0
cap_fver=0 cap_frootid=0
type=PATH msg=audit(1639668826.074:298): item=1 name="/usr/libexec/platform-python"
inode=4618433 dev=fd:01 mode=0100755 ouid=0 ogid=0 rdev=00:00
obj=system_u:object_r:bin_t:s0 nametype=NORMAL cap_fp=0 cap_fi=0 cap_fe=0
cap_fver=0 cap_frootid=0
type=PATH msg=audit(1639668826.074:298): item=0 name="/usr/bin/dnf" inode=6886099
dev=fd:01 mode=0100755 ouid=0 ogid=0 rdev=00:00 obj=system_u:object_r:rpm_exec_t:s0
nametype=NORMAL cap_fp=0 cap_fi=0 cap_fe=0 cap_fver=0 cap_frootid=0
type=CWD msg=audit(1639668826.074:298): cwd="/root"
type=EXECVE msg=audit(1639668826.074:298): argc=5 a0="/usr/libexec/platform-python"
a1="/usr/bin/dnf" a2="reinstall" a3="-y" a4="vim-enhanced"
type=SYSCALL msg=audit(1639668826.074:298): arch=c000003e syscall=59 success=yes
exit=0 a0=55c437f22b20 a1=55c437f2c9d0 a2=55c437f2aeb0 a3=8 items=3 ppid=5256
pid=5375 auid=0 uid=0 gid=0 euid=0 suid=0 fsuid=0 egid=0 sgid=0 fsgid=0 tty=pts0 ses=3
comm="dnf" exe="/usr/libexec/platform-python3.6"
subj=unconfined_u:unconfined_r:unconfined_t:s0-s0:c0.c1023 key="software-installer"
```

## 11.12. MONITORING USER LOGIN TIMES WITH AUDIT

To monitor which users logged in at specific times, you do not need to configure Audit in any special way. You can use the **ausearch** or **aureport** tools, which provide different ways of presenting the same information.

### Prerequisites

- **auditd** is configured in accordance with the settings provided in [Configuring auditd for a secure environment](#).

### Procedure

To display user log in times, use any one of the following commands:

- Search the audit log for the **USER\_LOGIN** message type:

```
ausearch -m USER_LOGIN -ts '12/02/2020' '18:00:00' -sv no
time->Mon Nov 22 07:33:22 2021
type=USER_LOGIN msg=audit(1637584402.416:92): pid=1939 uid=0 auid=4294967295
ses=4294967295 subj=system_u:system_r:sshd_t:s0-s0:c0.c1023 msg='op=login acct="
(unknown)" exe="/usr/sbin/sshd" hostname=? addr=10.37.128.108 terminal=ssh res=failed'
```

- You can specify the date and time with the **-ts** option. If you do not use this option, **ausearch** provides results from today, and if you omit time, **ausearch** provides results from midnight.



- You can use the **-sv yes** option to filter out successful login attempts and **-sv no** for unsuccessful login attempts.
- Pipe the raw output of the **ausearch** command into the **aulast** utility, which displays the output in a format similar to the output of the **last** command. For example:

```
ausearch --raw | aulast --stdin
root ssh 10.37.128.108 Mon Nov 22 07:33 - 07:33 (00:00)
root ssh 10.37.128.108 Mon Nov 22 07:33 - 07:33 (00:00)
root ssh 10.22.16.106 Mon Nov 22 07:40 - 07:40 (00:00)
reboot system boot 4.18.0-348.6.el8 Mon Nov 22 07:33
```

- Display the list of login events by using the **aureport** command with the **--login -i** options.

```
aureport --login -i

Login Report
=====
date time auid host term exe success event
=====
1. 11/16/2021 13:11:30 root 10.40.192.190 ssh /usr/sbin/sshd yes 6920
2. 11/16/2021 13:11:31 root 10.40.192.190 ssh /usr/sbin/sshd yes 6925
3. 11/16/2021 13:11:31 root 10.40.192.190 ssh /usr/sbin/sshd yes 6930
4. 11/16/2021 13:11:31 root 10.40.192.190 ssh /usr/sbin/sshd yes 6935
5. 11/16/2021 13:11:33 root 10.40.192.190 ssh /usr/sbin/sshd yes 6940
6. 11/16/2021 13:11:33 root 10.40.192.190 /dev/pts/0 /usr/sbin/sshd yes 6945
```

### Additional resources

- **ausearch(8)**, **aulast(8)**, and **aureport(8)** man pages on your system

## 11.13. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES

- [RHEL Audit System Reference](#) (Red Hat Knowledgebase)
- [Auditd execution options in a container](#) (Red Hat Knowledgebase)
- [Linux Audit Documentation Project page](#) (Github.com)
- Documentation in the **/usr/share/doc/audit/** directory provided by the **audit** package
- **auditd(8)**, **auditctl(8)**, **ausearch(8)**, **audit.rules(7)**, **audispd.conf(5)**, **audispd(8)**, **auditd.conf(5)**, **ausearch-expression(5)**, **aulast(8)**, **aulastlog(8)**, **aureport(8)**, **ausyscall(8)**, **autrace(8)**, and **auvirt(8)** man pages on your system

[2] Because **dnf** is a symlink in RHEL, the path in the **dnf** Audit rule must include the target of the symlink. To receive correct Audit events, modify the **44-installers.rules** file by changing the **path=/usr/bin/dnf** path to **/usr/bin/dnf-3**.

## CHAPTER 12. BLOCKING AND ALLOWING APPLICATIONS BY USING FAPOLICYD

Setting and enforcing a policy that either allows or denies application execution based on a rule set efficiently prevents the execution of unknown and potentially malicious software.

### 12.1. INTRODUCTION TO FAPOLICYD

The **fapolicyd** software framework controls the execution of applications based on a user-defined policy. This is one of the most efficient ways to prevent running untrusted and possibly malicious applications on the system.

The **fapolicyd** framework provides the following components:

- **fapolicyd** service
- **fapolicyd** command-line utilities
- **fapolicyd** RPM plugin
- **fapolicyd** rule language
- **fagenrules** script

The administrator can define the **allow** and **deny** execution rules for any application with the possibility of auditing based on a path, hash, MIME type, or trust.

The **fapolicyd** framework introduces the concept of trust. An application is trusted when it is properly installed by the system package manager, and therefore it is registered in the system RPM database. The **fapolicyd** daemon uses the RPM database as a list of trusted binaries and scripts. The **fapolicyd** RPM plugin registers any system update that is handled by either the DNF package manager or the RPM Package Manager. The plugin notifies the **fapolicyd** daemon about changes in this database. Other ways of adding applications require the creation of custom rules and restarting the **fapolicyd** service.

The **fapolicyd** service configuration is located in the **/etc/fapolicyd/** directory with the following structure:

- The **/etc/fapolicyd/fapolicyd.trust** file contains a list of trusted files. You can also use multiple trust files in the **/etc/fapolicyd/trust.d/** directory.
- The **/etc/fapolicyd/rules.d/** directory for files containing **allow** and **deny** execution rules. The **fagenrules** script merges these component rules files to the **/etc/fapolicyd/compiled.rules** file.
- The **fapolicyd.conf** file contains the daemon's configuration options. This file is useful primarily for performance-tuning purposes.

Rules in **/etc/fapolicyd/rules.d/** are organized in several files, each representing a different policy goal. The numbers at the beginning of the corresponding file names determine the order in **/etc/fapolicyd/compiled.rules**:

10

Language rules.

20

Dracut-related Rules.

|    |                         |
|----|-------------------------|
| 21 | rules for updaters.     |
| 30 | Patterns.               |
| 40 | ELF rules.              |
| 41 | Shared objects rules.   |
| 42 | Trusted ELF rules.      |
| 70 | Trusted language rules. |
| 72 | Shell rules.            |
| 90 | Deny execute rules.     |
| 95 | Allow open rules.       |

You can use one of the following ways for **fapolicyd** integrity checking:

- File-size checking
- Comparing SHA-256 hashes
- Integrity Measurement Architecture (IMA) subsystem

By default, **fapolicyd** does no integrity checking. Integrity checking based on the file size is fast, but an attacker can replace the content of the file and preserve its byte size. Computing and checking SHA-256 checksums is more secure, but it affects the performance of the system. The **integrity = ima** option in **fapolicyd.conf** requires support for files extended attributes (also known as **xattr**) on all file systems containing executable files.

#### Additional resources

- **fapolicyd(8)**, **fapolicyd.rules(5)**, **fapolicyd.conf(5)**, **fapolicyd.trust(13)**, **fagenrules(8)**, and **fapolicyd-cli(1)** man pages.
- The [Enhancing security with the kernel integrity subsystem](#) chapter in the [Managing, monitoring, and updating the kernel](#) document.
- The documentation installed with the **fapolicyd** package in the **/usr/share/doc/fapolicyd/** directory and the **/usr/share/fapolicyd/sample-rules/README-rules** file.

## 12.2. DEPLOYING FAPOLICYD

When deploying the **fapolicyd** application allowlisting framework, you can either try your configuration in permissive mode first or directly enable the service in the default configuration.

## Procedure

1. Install the **fapolicyd** package:

```
dnf install fapolicyd
```

2. Optional: To try your configuration first, change mode to permissive.

- a. Open the **/etc/fapolicyd/fapolicyd.conf** file in a text editor of your choice, for example:

```
vi /etc/fapolicyd/fapolicyd.conf
```

- b. Change the value of the **permissive** option from **0** to **1**, save the file, and exit the editor:

```
permissive = 1
```

Alternatively, you can debug your configuration by using the **fapolicyd --debug-deny --permissive** command before you start the service. See the [Troubleshooting problems related to fapolicyd](#) section for more information.

3. Enable and start the **fapolicyd** service:

```
systemctl enable --now fapolicyd
```

4. If you enabled permissive mode through **/etc/fapolicyd/fapolicyd.conf**:

- a. Set the Audit service for recording **fapolicyd** events:

```
auditctl -w /etc/fapolicyd/ -p wa -k fapolicyd_changes
service try-restart auditd
```

- b. Use your applications.

- c. Check Audit logs for **fanotify** denials, for example:

```
ausearch -ts recent -m fanotify
```

- d. When debugged, disable permissive mode by changing the corresponding value back to **permissive = 0**, and restart the service:

```
systemctl restart fapolicyd
```

## Verification

1. Verify that the **fapolicyd** service is running correctly:

```
systemctl status fapolicyd
● fapolicyd.service - File Access Policy Daemon
 Loaded: loaded (/usr/lib/systemd/system/fapolicyd.service; enabled; preset: disabled)
 Active: active (running) since Tue 2024-10-08 05:53:50 EDT; 11s ago
 ...
Oct 08 05:53:51 machine1.example.com fapolicyd[4974]: Loading trust data from rpmdb
backend
```

```
Oct 08 05:53:51 machine1.example.com fapolicyd[4974]: Loading trust data from file
backend
Oct 08 05:53:51 machine1.example.com fapolicyd[4974]: Starting to listen for events
```

2. Log in as a user without root privileges, and check that **fapolicyd** is working, for example:

```
$ cp /bin/ls /tmp
$ /tmp/ls
bash: /tmp/ls: Operation not permitted
```

## 12.3. MARKING FILES AS TRUSTED USING AN ADDITIONAL SOURCE OF TRUST

The **fapolicyd** framework trusts files contained in the RPM database. You can mark additional files as trusted by adding the corresponding entries to the **/etc/fapolicyd/fapolicyd.trust** plain-text file or the **/etc/fapolicyd/trust.d/** directory, which supports separating a list of trusted files into more files. You can modify **fapolicyd.trust** or the files in **/etc/fapolicyd/trust.d** either directly using a text editor or through **fapolicyd-cli** commands.



### NOTE

Marking files as trusted using **fapolicyd.trust** or **trust.d/** is better than writing custom **fapolicyd** rules due to performance reasons.

### Prerequisites

- The **fapolicyd** framework is deployed on your system.

### Procedure

1. Copy your custom binary to the required directory, for example:

```
$ cp /bin/ls /tmp
$ /tmp/ls
bash: /tmp/ls: Operation not permitted
```

2. Mark your custom binary as trusted, and store the corresponding entry to the **myapp** file in **/etc/fapolicyd/trust.d/**:

```
fapolicyd-cli --file add /tmp/ls --trust-file myapp
```

- If you skip the **--trust-file** option, then the previous command adds the corresponding line to **/etc/fapolicyd/fapolicyd.trust**.
  - To mark all existing files in a directory as trusted, provide the directory path as an argument of the **--file** option, for example: **fapolicyd-cli --file add /tmp/my\_bin\_dir/ --trust-file myapp**.
3. Update the **fapolicyd** database:

```
fapolicyd-cli --update
```



## NOTE

Changing the content of a trusted file or directory changes their checksum, and therefore **fapolicyd** no longer considers them trusted.

To make the new content trusted again, refresh the file trust database by using the **fapolicyd-cli --file update** command. If you do not provide any argument, the entire database refreshes. Alternatively, you can specify a path to a specific file or directory. Then, update the database by using **fapolicyd-cli --update**.

## Verification

1. Check that your custom binary can be now executed, for example:

```
$ /tmp/ls
ls
```

## Additional resources

- **fapolicyd.trust(13)** man page on your system

## 12.4. ADDING CUSTOM ALLOW AND DENY RULES FOR FAPOLICYD

The default set of rules in the **fapolicyd** package does not affect system functions. For custom scenarios, such as storing binaries and scripts in a non-standard directory or adding applications without the **dnf** or **rpm** installers, you must either mark additional files as trusted or add new custom rules.

For basic scenarios, prefer [Marking files as trusted using an additional source of trust](#) . In more advanced scenarios such as allowing to execute a custom binary only for specific user and group identifiers, add new custom rules to the **/etc/fapolicyd/rules.d/** directory.

The following steps demonstrate adding a new rule to allow a custom binary.

## Prerequisites

- The **fapolicyd** framework is deployed on your system.

## Procedure

1. Copy your custom binary to the required directory, for example:

```
$ cp /bin/ls /tmp
$ /tmp/ls
bash: /tmp/ls: Operation not permitted
```

2. Stop the **fapolicyd** service:

```
systemctl stop fapolicyd
```

3. Use debug mode to identify a corresponding rule. Because the output of the **fapolicyd --debug** command is verbose and you can stop it only by pressing **Ctrl+C** or killing the corresponding process, redirect the error output to a file. In this case, you can limit the output only to access denials by using the **--debug-deny** option instead of **--debug**:

```
fapolicyd --debug-deny 2> fapolicy.output &
[1] 51341
```

Alternatively, you can run **fapolicyd** debug mode in another terminal.

4. Repeat the command that **fapolicyd** denied:

```
$ /tmp/ls
bash: /tmp/ls: Operation not permitted
```

5. Stop debug mode by resuming it in the foreground and pressing **Ctrl+C**:

```
fg
fapolicyd --debug 2> fapolicy.output
^C
...
```

Alternatively, kill the process of **fapolicyd** debug mode:

```
kill 51341
```

6. Find a rule that denies the execution of your application:

```
cat fapolicy.output | grep 'deny_audit'
...
rule=13 dec=deny_audit perm=execute auid=0 pid=6855 exe=/usr/bin/bash : path=/tmp/ls
ftype=application/x-executable trust=0
```

7. Locate the file that contains a rule that prevented the execution of your custom binary. In this case, the **deny\_audit perm=execute** rule belongs to the **90-deny-execute.rules** file:

```
ls /etc/fapolicyd/rules.d/
10-languages.rules 40-bad-elf.rules 72-shell.rules
20-dracut.rules 41-shared-obj.rules 90-deny-execute.rules
21-updaters.rules 42-trusted-elf.rules 95-allow-open.rules
30-patterns.rules 70-trusted-lang.rules

cat /etc/fapolicyd/rules.d/90-deny-execute.rules
Deny execution for anything untrusted

deny_audit perm=execute all : all
```

8. Add a new **allow** rule to the file that lexically *precedes* the rule file that contains the rule that denied the execution of your custom binary in the **/etc/fapolicyd/rules.d/** directory:

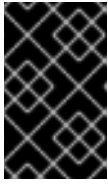
```
touch /etc/fapolicyd/rules.d/80-myapps.rules
vi /etc/fapolicyd/rules.d/80-myapps.rules
```

Insert the following rule to the **80-myapps.rules** file:

```
allow perm=execute exe=/usr/bin/bash trust=1 : path=/tmp/ls ftype=application/x-executable
trust=0
```

Alternatively, you can allow executions of all binaries in the **/tmp** directory by adding the following rule to the rule file in **/etc/fapolicyd/rules.d/**:

```
allow perm=execute exe=/usr/bin/bash trust=1 : dir=/tmp/ trust=0
```



### IMPORTANT

To make a rule effective recursively on all directories under the specified directory, add a trailing slash to the value of the **dir=** parameter in the rule (**/tmp/** in the previous example).

- To prevent changes in the content of your custom binary, define the required rule using an SHA-256 checksum:

```
$ sha256sum /tmp/ls
780b75c90b2d41ea41679fcb358c892b1251b68d1927c80fbc0d9d148b25e836 ls
```

Change the rule to the following definition:

```
allow perm=execute exe=/usr/bin/bash trust=1 :
sha256hash=780b75c90b2d41ea41679fcb358c892b1251b68d1927c80fbc0d9d148b25e836
```

- Check that the list of compiled differs from the rule set in **/etc/fapolicyd/rules.d/**, and update the list, which is stored in the **/etc/fapolicyd/compiled.rules** file:

```
fagenrules --check
/usr/sbin/fagenrules: Rules have changed and should be updated
fagenrules --load
```

- Check that your custom rule is in the list of **fapolicyd** rules before the rule that prevented the execution:

```
fapolicyd-cli --list
...
13. allow perm=execute exe=/usr/bin/bash trust=1 : path=/tmp/ls ftype=application/x-
executable trust=0
14. deny_audit perm=execute all : all
...
```

- Start the **fapolicyd** service:

```
systemctl start fapolicyd
```

### Verification

- Check that your custom binary can be now executed, for example:

```
$ /tmp/ls
ls
```

### Additional resources



- **fapolicyd.rules(5)** and **fapolicyd-cli(1)** man pages on your system
- The documentation installed with the **fapolicyd** package in the **/usr/share/fapolicyd/sample-rules/README-rules** file.

## 12.5. ENABLING FAPOLICYD INTEGRITY CHECKS

By default, **fapolicyd** does not perform integrity checking. You can configure **fapolicyd** to perform integrity checks by comparing either file sizes or SHA-256 hashes. You can also set integrity checks by using the Integrity Measurement Architecture (IMA) subsystem.

### Prerequisites

- The **fapolicyd** framework is deployed on your system.

### Procedure

1. Open the **/etc/fapolicyd/fapolicyd.conf** file in a text editor of your choice, for example:

```
vi /etc/fapolicyd/fapolicyd.conf
```

2. Change the value of the **integrity** option from **none** to **sha256**, save the file, and exit the editor:

```
integrity = sha256
```

3. Restart the **fapolicyd** service:

```
systemctl restart fapolicyd
```

### Verification

1. Back up the file used for the verification:

```
cp /bin/more /bin/more.bak
```

2. Change the content of the **/bin/more** binary:

```
cat /bin/less > /bin/more
```

3. Use the changed binary as a regular user:

```
su example.user
$ /bin/more /etc/redhat-release
bash: /bin/more: Operation not permitted
```

4. Revert the changes:

```
mv -f /bin/more.bak /bin/more
```

## 12.6. TROUBLESHOOTING PROBLEMS RELATED TO FAPOLICYD

The **fafolicyd** application framework provides tools for troubleshooting the most common problems and you can also add applications installed with the **rpm** command to the trust database.

### Installing applications by using rpm

- If you install an application by using the **rpm** command, you have to perform a manual refresh of the **fafolicyd** RPM database:

1. Install your *application*:

```
rpm -i application.rpm
```

2. Refresh the database:

```
fafolicyd-cli --update
```

If you skip this step, the system can freeze and must be restarted.

### Service status

- If **fafolicyd** does not work correctly, check the service status:

```
systemctl status fafolicyd
```

### fafolicyd-cli checks and listings

- The **--check-config**, **--check-watch\_fs**, and **--check-trustdb** options help you find syntax errors, not-yet-watched file systems, and file mismatches, for example:

```
fafolicyd-cli --check-config
Daemon config is OK

fafolicyd-cli --check-trustdb
/etc/selinux/targeted/contexts/files/file_contexts mismatches: size sha256
/etc/selinux/targeted/policy/policy.31 mismatches: size sha256
```

- Use the **--list** option to check the current list of rules and their order:

```
fafolicyd-cli --list
...
9. allow perm=execute all : trust=1
10. allow perm=open all : ftype=%languages trust=1
11. deny_audit perm=any all : ftype=%languages
12. allow perm=any all : ftype=text/x-shellscrip
13. deny_audit perm=execute all : all
...
```

### Debug mode

- Debug mode provides detailed information about matched rules, database status, and more. To switch **fafolicyd** to debug mode:

1. Stop the **fafolicyd** service:

■

```
systemctl stop fapolicyd
```

2. Use debug mode to identify a corresponding rule:

```
fapolicyd --debug
```

Because the output of the **fapolicyd --debug** command is verbose, you can redirect the error output to a file:

```
fapolicyd --debug 2> fapolicy.output
```

Alternatively, to limit the output only to entries when **fapolicyd** denies access, use the **--debug-deny** option:

```
fapolicyd --debug-deny
```

You can also use permissive mode, which does not prevent running your application but only records the matched **fapolicyd** rule:

```
fapolicyd --debug-deny --permissive
```

## Removing the **fapolicyd** database

- To solve problems related to the **fapolicyd** database, try to remove the database file:

```
systemctl stop fapolicyd
fapolicyd-cli --delete-db
```



### WARNING

Do not remove the **/var/lib/fapolicyd/** directory. The **fapolicyd** framework automatically restores only the database file in this directory.

## Dumping the **fapolicyd** database

- The **fapolicyd** contains entries from all enabled trust sources. You can check the entries after dumping the database:

```
fapolicyd-cli --dump-db
```

## Application pipe

- In rare cases, removing the **fapolicyd** pipe file can solve a lockup:

```
rm -f /var/run/fapolicyd/fapolicyd.fifo
```

## Additional resources

- **fapolicyd-cli(1)** man page on your system

## 12.7. PREVENTING USERS FROM EXECUTING UNTRUSTWORTHY CODE BY USING THE **FAPOLICYD** RHEL SYSTEM ROLE

You can automate the installation and configuration of the **fapolicyd** service by using the **fapolicyd** RHEL system role. With this role, you can remotely configure the service to allow users to execute only trusted applications, for example, the ones which are listed in the RPM database and in an allow list. Additionally, the service can perform integrity checks before it executes an allowed application.

### Prerequisites

- You have prepared the control node and the managed nodes
- You are logged in to the control node as a user who can run playbooks on the managed nodes.
- The account you use to connect to the managed nodes has **sudo** permissions on them.

### Procedure

1. Create a playbook file, for example `~/playbook.yml`, with the following content:

```

- name: Configuring fapolicyd
 hosts: managed-node-01.example.com
 tasks:
 - name: Allow only executables installed from RPM database and specific files
 ansible.builtin.include_role:
 name: redhat.rhel_system_roles.fapolicyd
 vars:
 fapolicyd_setup_permissive: false
 fapolicyd_setup_integrity: sha256
 fapolicyd_setup_trust: rpmdb,file
 fapolicyd_add_trusted_file:
 - <path_to_allowed_command>
 - <path_to_allowed_service>
```

The settings specified in the example playbook include the following:

#### **fapolicyd\_setup\_permissive: <true/false>**

Enables or disables sending policy decisions to the kernel for enforcement. Set this variable for debugging and testing purposes to **false**.

#### **fapolicyd\_setup\_integrity: <type\_type>**

Defines the integrity checking method. You can set one of the following values:

- **none** (default): Disables integrity checking.
- **size**: The service compares only the file sizes of allowed applications.
- **ima**: The service checks the SHA-256 hash that the kernel's Integrity Measurement Architecture (IMA) stored in a file's extended attribute. Additionally, the service performs a size check. Note that the role does not configure the IMA kernel subsystem. To use this option, you must manually configure the IMA subsystem.

- **sha256**: The service compares the SHA-256 hash of allowed applications.

**fapolicyd\_setup\_trust:** *<trust\_backends>*

Defines the list of trust backends. If you include the **file** backend, specify the allowed executable files in the **fapolicyd\_add\_trusted\_file** list.

For details about all variables used in the playbook, see the **/usr/share/ansible/roles/rhel-system-roles.fapolicyd.README.md** file on the control node.

2. Validate the playbook syntax:

```
$ ansible-playbook ~/playbook.yml --syntax-check
```

Note that this command only validates the syntax and does not protect against a wrong but valid configuration.

3. Run the playbook:

```
$ ansible-playbook ~/playbook.yml
```

## Verification

- Execute a binary application that is not on the allow list as a user:

```
$ ansible managed-node-01.example.com -m command -a 'su -c
"/bin/not_authorized_application " <user_name>'
bash: line 1: /bin/not_authorized_application: Operation not permitted non-zero return code
```

## Additional resources

- **/usr/share/ansible/roles/rhel-system-roles.fapolicyd/README.md** file
- **/usr/share/doc/rhel-system-roles/fapolicyd/** directory

## 12.8. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES

- **fapolicyd**-related man pages listed by using the **man -k fapolicyd** command on your system
- [FOSDEM 2020 fapolicyd](#) presentation

## CHAPTER 13. PROTECTING SYSTEMS AGAINST INTRUSIVE USB DEVICES

USB devices can be loaded with spyware, malware, or trojans, which can steal your data or damage your system. As a Red Hat Enterprise Linux administrator, you can prevent such USB attacks with **USBGuard**.

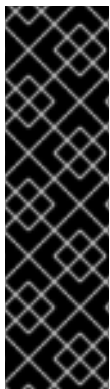
### 13.1. USBGUARD

With the USBGuard software framework, you can protect your systems against intrusive USB devices by using basic lists of permitted and forbidden devices based on the USB device authorization feature in the kernel.

The USBGuard framework provides the following components:

- The system service component with an inter-process communication (IPC) interface for dynamic interaction and policy enforcement
- The command line to interact with a running **usbguard** system service
- The rule language for writing USB device authorization policies
- The C++ API for interacting with the system service component implemented in a shared library

The **usbguard** system service configuration file ( `/etc/usbguard/usbguard-daemon.conf` ) includes the options to authorize the users and groups to use the IPC interface.



#### IMPORTANT

The system service provides the USBGuard public IPC interface. In Red Hat Enterprise Linux, the access to this interface is limited to the root user only by default.

Consider setting either the **IPCAccessControlFiles** option (recommended) or the **IPCAccessControlFiles** and **IPCAccessControlFiles** options to limit access to the IPC interface.

Ensure that you do not leave the Access Control List (ACL) unconfigured as this exposes the IPC interface to all local users and allows them to manipulate the authorization state of USB devices and modify the USBGuard policy.

### 13.2. INSTALLING USBGUARD

Use this procedure to install and initiate the USBGuard framework.

#### Procedure

1. Install the **usbguard** package:

```
dnf install usbguard
```

2. Create an initial rule set:

```
usbguard generate-policy > /etc/usbguard/rules.conf
```

3. Start the **usbguard** daemon and ensure that it starts automatically on boot:

```
systemctl enable --now usbguard
```

## Verification

1. Verify that the **usbguard** service is running:

```
systemctl status usbguard
● usbguard.service - USBGuard daemon
 Loaded: loaded (/usr/lib/systemd/system/usbguard.service; enabled; vendor preset: disabled)
 Active: active (running) since Thu 2019-11-07 09:44:07 CET; 3min 16s ago
 Docs: man:usbguard-daemon(8)
 Main PID: 6122 (usbguard-daemon)
 Tasks: 3 (limit: 11493)
 Memory: 1.2M
 CGroup: /system.slice/usbguard.service
 └─6122 /usr/sbin/usbguard-daemon -f -s -c /etc/usbguard/usbguard-daemon.conf

Nov 07 09:44:06 localhost.localdomain systemd[1]: Starting USBGuard daemon...
Nov 07 09:44:07 localhost.localdomain systemd[1]: Started USBGuard daemon.
```

2. List USB devices recognized by USBGuard:

```
usbguard list-devices
4: allow id 1d6b:0002 serial "0000:02:00.0" name "xHCI Host Controller" hash...
```

## Additional resources

- **usbguard(1)** and **usbguard-daemon.conf(5)** man pages.

## 13.3. BLOCKING AND AUTHORIZING A USB DEVICE BY USING CLI

You can set USBGuard to authorize and block a USB device by using the **usbguard** command in your terminal.

### Prerequisites

- The **usbguard** service is installed and running.

### Procedure

1. List USB devices recognized by USBGuard, for example:

```
usbguard list-devices
1: allow id 1d6b:0002 serial "0000:00:06.7" name "EHCI Host Controller" hash
 "JDOb0BiktYs2ct3mSQKopnOOV2h9MGYADwhT+oUtF2s=" parent-hash
 "4PHGcaDKWtPjKDwYpIRG722cB9SIGz9l9lea93+Gt9c=" via-port "usb1" with-interface
 09:00:00
...
6: block id 1b1c:1ab1 serial "000024937962" name "Voyager" hash
 "CrXgiaWlf2bZAU+5WkzOE7y0rdSO82XMzubn7HDb95Q=" parent-hash
 "JDOb0BiktYs2ct3mSQKopnOOV2h9MGYADwhT+oUtF2s=" via-port "1-3" with-interface
 08:06:50
```

2. Authorize the device <6> to interact with the system:

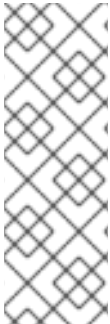
```
usbguard allow-device <6>
```

3. Deauthorize and remove the device <6>:

```
usbguard reject-device <6>
```

4. Deauthorize and retain the device <6>:

```
usbguard block-device <6>
```



## NOTE

USBGuard uses the terms **block** and **reject** with the following meanings:

### **block**

Do not interact with this device for now.

### **reject**

Ignore this device as if it does not exist.

## Additional resources

- **usbguard(1)** man page on your system
- **usbguard --help** command

## 13.4. PERMANENTLY BLOCKING AND AUTHORIZING A USB DEVICE

You can permanently block and authorize a USB device by using the **-p** option. This adds a device-specific rule to the current policy.

### Prerequisites

- The **usbguard** service is installed and running.

### Procedure

1. Configure SELinux to allow the **usbguard** daemon to write rules.

- a. Display the **semanage** Booleans relevant to **usbguard**.

```
semanage boolean -l | grep usbguard
usbguard_daemon_write_conf (off , off) Allow usbguard to daemon write conf
usbguard_daemon_write_rules (on , on) Allow usbguard to daemon write rules
```

- b. Optional: If the **usbguard\_daemon\_write\_rules** Boolean is turned off, turn it on.

```
semanage boolean -m --on usbguard_daemon_write_rules
```

2. List USB devices recognized by USBGuard:

■



```
usbguard list-devices
1: allow id 1d6b:0002 serial "0000:00:06.7" name "EHCI Host Controller" hash
"JDOb0BiktYs2ct3mSQKopnOOV2h9MGYADwhT+oUtF2s=" parent-hash
"4PHGcaDKWtPjKDwYpIRG722cB9SIGz9l9lea93+Gt9c=" via-port "usb1" with-interface
09:00:00
...
6: block id 1b1c:1ab1 serial "000024937962" name "Voyager" hash
"CrXgiaWlf2bZAU+5WkzOE7y0rdSO82XMzubn7HDb95Q=" parent-hash
"JDOb0BiktYs2ct3mSQKopnOOV2h9MGYADwhT+oUtF2s=" via-port "1-3" with-interface
08:06:50
```

3. Permanently authorize device **6** to interact with the system:

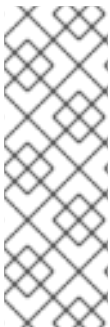
```
usbguard allow-device 6 -p
```

4. Permanently deauthorize and remove device **6**:

```
usbguard reject-device 6 -p
```

5. Permanently deauthorize and retain device **6**:

```
usbguard block-device 6 -p
```



## NOTE

**USBGuard** uses the terms **block** and **reject** with the following meanings:

### **block**

Do not interact with this device for now.

### **reject**

Ignore this device as if it does not exist.

## Verification

1. Check that USBGuard rules include the changes you made.

```
usbguard list-rules
```

## Additional resources

- **usbguard(1)** man page on your system
- Built-in help listed by using the **usbguard --help** command.

## 13.5. CREATING A CUSTOM POLICY FOR USB DEVICES

The following procedure contains steps for creating a rule set for USB devices that reflects the requirements of your scenario.

### Prerequisites

- The **usbguard** service is installed and running.

- The **/etc/usbguard/rules.conf** file contains an initial rule set generated by the **usbguard generate-policy** command.

## Procedure

1. Create a policy which authorizes the currently connected USB devices, and store the generated rules to the **rules.conf** file:

```
usbguard generate-policy --no-hashes > ./rules.conf
```

The **--no-hashes** option does not generate hash attributes for devices. Avoid hash attributes in your configuration settings because they might not be persistent.

2. Edit the **rules.conf** file with a text editor of your choice, for example:

```
vi ./rules.conf
```

3. Add, remove, or edit the rules as required. For example, the following rule allows only devices with a single mass storage interface to interact with the system:

```
allow with-interface equals { 08:*:* }
```

See the **usbguard-rules.conf(5)** man page for a detailed rule-language description and more examples.

4. Install the updated policy:

```
install -m 0600 -o root -g root rules.conf /etc/usbguard/rules.conf
```

5. Restart the **usbguard** daemon to apply your changes:

```
systemctl restart usbguard
```

## Verification

1. Check that your custom rules are in the active policy, for example:

```
usbguard list-rules
...
4: allow with-interface 08:*:*
...
```

## Additional resources

- **usbguard-rules.conf(5)** man page on your system

## 13.6. CREATING A STRUCTURED CUSTOM POLICY FOR USB DEVICES

You can organize your custom USBGuard policy in several **.conf** files within the **/etc/usbguard/rules.d/** directory. The **usbguard-daemon** then combines the main **rules.conf** file with the **.conf** files within the directory in alphabetical order.

## Prerequisites

- The **usbguard** service is installed and running.

## Procedure

1. Create a policy which authorizes the currently connected USB devices, and store the generated rules to a new **.conf** file, for example, **policy.conf**.

```
usbguard generate-policy --no-hashes > ./policy.conf
```

The **--no-hashes** option does not generate hash attributes for devices. Avoid hash attributes in your configuration settings because they might not be persistent.

2. Display the **policy.conf** file with a text editor of your choice, for example:

```
vi ./policy.conf
...
allow id 04f2:0833 serial "" name "USB Keyboard" via-port "7-2" with-interface { 03:01:01
03:00:00 } with-connect-type "unknown"
...
```

3. Move selected lines into a separate **.conf** file.



### NOTE

The two digits at the beginning of the file name specify the order in which the daemon reads the configuration files.

For example, copy the rules for your keyboards into a new **.conf** file.

```
grep "USB Keyboard" ./policy.conf > ./10keyboards.conf
```

4. Install the new policy to the **/etc/usbguard/rules.d/** directory.

```
install -m 0600 -o root -g root 10keyboards.conf /etc/usbguard/rules.d/ 10keyboards.conf
```

5. Move the rest of the lines to a main **rules.conf** file.

```
grep -v "USB Keyboard" ./policy.conf > ./rules.conf
```

6. Install the remaining rules.

```
install -m 0600 -o root -g root rules.conf /etc/usbguard/rules.conf
```

7. Restart the **usbguard** daemon to apply your changes.

```
systemctl restart usbguard
```

## Verification

1. Display all active USBGuard rules.

```
usbguard list-rules
...
15: allow id 04f2:0833 serial "" name "USB Keyboard" hash
"KxM/iddRe/WSCocgiuQIVs6Dn0VEza7KiHoDeTz0fyg=" parent-hash
"2i6ZBJfTI5BakXF7Gba84/Cp1gslnNc1DM6vWQpie3s=" via-port "7-2" with-interface {
03:01:01 03:00:00 } with-connect-type "unknown"
...
```

2. Display the contents of the **rules.conf** file and all the **.conf** files in the **/etc/usbguard/rules.d/** directory.

```
cat /etc/usbguard/rules.conf /etc/usbguard/rules.d/*.conf
```

3. Verify that the active rules contain all the rules from the files and are in the correct order.

### Additional resources

- **usbguard-rules.conf(5)** man page on your system

## 13.7. AUTHORIZING USERS AND GROUPS TO USE THE USBGUARD IPC INTERFACE

Use this procedure to authorize a specific user or a group to use the USBGuard public IPC interface. By default, only the root user can use this interface.

### Prerequisites

- The **usbguard** service is installed and running.
- The **/etc/usbguard/rules.conf** file contains an initial rule set generated by the **usbguard generate-policy** command.

### Procedure

1. Edit the **/etc/usbguard/usbguard-daemon.conf** file with a text editor of your choice:

```
vi /etc/usbguard/usbguard-daemon.conf
```

2. For example, add a line with a rule that allows all users in the **wheel** group to use the IPC interface, and save the file:

```
IPCAllowGroups=wheel
```

3. You can add users or groups also with the **usbguard** command. For example, the following command enables the **joesec** user to have full access to the **Devices** and **Exceptions** sections. Furthermore, **joesec** can list and modify the current policy:

```
usbguard add-user joesec --devices ALL --policy modify,list --exceptions ALL
```

To remove the granted permissions for the **joesec** user, use the **usbguard remove-user joesec** command.

4. Restart the **usbguard** daemon to apply your changes:

```
systemctl restart usbguard
```

#### Additional resources

- **usbguard(1)** and **usbguard-rules.conf(5)** man pages.

## 13.8. LOGGING USBGUARD AUTHORIZATION EVENTS TO THE LINUX AUDIT LOG

Use the following steps to integrate logging of USBguard authorization events to the standard Linux Audit log. By default, the **usbguard** daemon logs events to the **/var/log/usbguard/usbguard-audit.log** file.

#### Prerequisites

- The **usbguard** service is installed and running.
- The **auditd** service is running.

#### Procedure

1. Edit the **usbguard-daemon.conf** file with a text editor of your choice:

```
vi /etc/usbguard/usbguard-daemon.conf
```

2. Change the **AuditBackend** option from **FileAudit** to **LinuxAudit**:

```
AuditBackend=LinuxAudit
```

3. Restart the **usbguard** daemon to apply the configuration change:

```
systemctl restart usbguard
```

#### Verification

1. Query the **audit** daemon log for a USB authorization event, for example:

```
ausearch -ts recent -m USER_DEVICE
```

#### Additional resources

- **usbguard-daemon.conf(5)** man page on your system

## 13.9. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES

- **usbguard(1)**, **usbguard-rules.conf(5)**, **usbguard-daemon(8)**, and **usbguard-daemon.conf(5)** man pages.
- [USBGuard Homepage](#).

## CHAPTER 14. CONFIGURING A REMOTE LOGGING SOLUTION

To ensure that logs from various machines in your environment are recorded centrally on a logging server, you can configure the **Rsyslog** application to record logs that fit specific criteria from the client system to the server.

### 14.1. THE RSYSLOG LOGGING SERVICE

The Rsyslog application, in combination with the **systemd-journald** service, provides local and remote logging support in Red Hat Enterprise Linux. The **rsyslogd** daemon continuously reads **syslog** messages received by the **systemd-journald** service from the Journal. **rsyslogd** then filters and processes these **syslog** events and records them to **rsyslog** log files or forwards them to other services according to its configuration.

The **rsyslogd** daemon also provides extended filtering, encryption protected relaying of messages, input and output modules, and support for transportation using the TCP and UDP protocols.

In **/etc/rsyslog.conf**, which is the main configuration file for **rsyslog**, you can specify the rules according to which **rsyslogd** handles the messages. Generally, you can classify messages by their source and topic (facility) and urgency (priority), and then assign an action that should be performed when a message fits these criteria.

In **/etc/rsyslog.conf**, you can also see a list of log files maintained by **rsyslogd**. Most log files are located in the **/var/log/** directory. Some applications, such as **httpd** and **samba**, store their log files in a subdirectory within **/var/log/**.

#### Additional resources

- **rsyslogd(8)** and **rsyslog.conf(5)** man pages on your system
- Documentation installed with the **rsyslog-doc** package in the **/usr/share/doc/rsyslog/html/index.html** file

### 14.2. INSTALLING RSYSLOG DOCUMENTATION

The Rsyslog application has extensive online documentation that is available at <https://www.rsyslog.com/doc/>, but you can also install the **rsyslog-doc** documentation package locally.

#### Prerequisites

- You have activated the **AppStream** repository on your system.
- You are authorized to install new packages using **sudo**.

#### Procedure

- Install the **rsyslog-doc** package:

```
dnf install rsyslog-doc
```

#### Verification

- Open the **/usr/share/doc/rsyslog/html/index.html** file in a browser of your choice, for example:  
■

```
$ firefox /usr/share/doc/rsyslog/html/index.html &
```

## 14.3. CONFIGURING A SERVER FOR REMOTE LOGGING OVER TCP

The Rsyslog application enables you to both run a logging server and configure individual systems to send their log files to the logging server. To use remote logging through TCP, configure both the server and the client. The server collects and analyzes the logs sent by one or more client systems.

With the Rsyslog application, you can maintain a centralized logging system where log messages are forwarded to a server over the network. To avoid message loss when the server is not available, you can configure an action queue for the forwarding action. This way, messages that failed to be sent are stored locally until the server is reachable again. Note that such queues cannot be configured for connections using the UDP protocol.

The **omfwd** plug-in provides forwarding over UDP or TCP. The default protocol is UDP. Because the plug-in is built in, it does not have to be loaded.

By default, **rsyslog** uses TCP on port **514**.

### Prerequisites

- Rsyslog is installed on the server system.
- You are logged in as **root** on the server.
- The **policymcoreutils-python-utils** package is installed for the optional step using the **semanage** command.
- The **firewalld** service is running.

### Procedure

1. Optional: To use a different port for **rsyslog** traffic, add the **syslogd\_port\_t** SELinux type to port. For example, enable port **30514**:

```
semanage port -a -t syslogd_port_t -p tcp 30514
```

2. Optional: To use a different port for **rsyslog** traffic, configure **firewalld** to allow incoming **rsyslog** traffic on that port. For example, allow TCP traffic on port **30514**:

```
firewall-cmd --zone=<zone-name> --permanent --add-port=30514/tcp
success
firewall-cmd --reload
```

3. Create a new file in the **/etc/rsyslog.d/** directory named, for example, **remotelog.conf**, and insert the following content:

```
Define templates before the rules that use them
Per-Host templates for remote systems
template(name="TmplAuthpriv" type="list") {
 constant(value="/var/log/remote/auth/")
 property(name="hostname")
 constant(value="/")
 property(name="programname" SecurePath="replace")
}
```

```

 constant(value=".log")
 }

 template(name="TplMsg" type="list") {
 constant(value="/var/log/remote/msg/")
 property(name="hostname")
 constant(value="/")
 property(name="programname" SecurePath="replace")
 constant(value=".log")
 }

 # Provides TCP syslog reception
 module(load="imtcp")

 # Adding this ruleset to process remote messages
 ruleset(name="remote1"){
 authpriv.* action(type="omfile" DynaFile="TplAuthpriv")
 *.info;mail.none;authpriv.none;cron.none
 action(type="omfile" DynaFile="TplMsg")
 }

 input(type="imtcp" port="30514" ruleset="remote1")

```

4. Save the changes to the **/etc/rsyslog.d/remotelog.conf** file.

5. Test the syntax of the **/etc/rsyslog.conf** file:

```

rsyslogd -N 1
rsyslogd: version 8.1911.0-2.el8, config validation run...
rsyslogd: End of config validation run. Bye.

```

6. Make sure the **rsyslog** service is running and enabled on the logging server:

```
systemctl status rsyslog
```

7. Restart the **rsyslog** service.

```
systemctl restart rsyslog
```

8. Optional: If **rsyslog** is not enabled, ensure the **rsyslog** service starts automatically after reboot:

```
systemctl enable rsyslog
```

Your log server is now configured to receive and store log files from the other systems in your environment.

### Additional resources

- **rsyslogd(8)**, **rsyslog.conf(5)**, **semanage(8)**, and **firewall-cmd(1)** man pages on your system
- Documentation installed with the **rsyslog-doc** package in the **/usr/share/doc/rsyslog/html/index.html** file



## 14.4. CONFIGURING REMOTE LOGGING TO A SERVER OVER TCP

You can configure a system for forwarding log messages to a server over the TCP protocol. The **omfwd** plug-in provides forwarding over UDP or TCP. The default protocol is UDP. Because the plug-in is built in, you do not have to load it.

### Prerequisites

- The **rsyslog** package is installed on the client systems that should report to the server.
- You have configured the server for remote logging.
- The specified port is permitted in SELinux and open in firewall.
- The system contains the **polycoreutils-python-utils** package, which provides the **semanage** command for adding a non-standard port to the SELinux configuration.

### Procedure

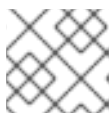
1. Create a new file in the **/etc/rsyslog.d/** directory named, for example, **10-remotelog.conf**, and insert the following content:

```
. action(type="omfwd"
 queue.type="linkedlist"
 queue.filename="example_fwd"
 action.resumeRetryCount="-1"
 queue.saveOnShutdown="on"
 target="example.com" port="30514" protocol="tcp"
)
```

Where:

- The **queue.type="linkedlist"** setting enables a LinkedList in-memory queue,
- The **queue.filename** setting defines a disk storage. The backup files are created with the **example\_fwd** prefix in the working directory specified by the preceding global **workDirectory** directive.
- The **action.resumeRetryCount -1** setting prevents **rsyslog** from dropping messages when retrying to connect if server is not responding,
- The **queue.saveOnShutdown="on"** setting saves in-memory data if **rsyslog** shuts down.
- The last line forwards all received messages to the logging server. Port specification is optional.

With this configuration, **rsyslog** sends messages to the server but keeps messages in memory if the remote server is not reachable. A file on disk is created only if **rsyslog** runs out of the configured memory queue space or needs to shut down, which benefits the system performance.



### NOTE

Rsyslog processes configuration files **/etc/rsyslog.d/** in the lexical order.

2. Restart the **rsyslog** service.

```
systemctl restart rsyslog
```

## Verification

To verify that the client system sends messages to the server, follow these steps:

1. On the client system, send a test message:

```
logger test
```

2. On the server system, view the `/var/log/messages` log, for example:

```
cat /var/log/remote/msg/hostname/root.log
Feb 25 03:53:17 hostname root[6064]: test
```

Where *hostname* is the host name of the client system. Note that the log contains the user name of the user that entered the **logger** command, in this case **root**.

## Additional resources

- **rsyslogd(8)** and **rsyslog.conf(5)** man pages on your system
- Documentation installed with the **rsyslog-doc** package in the `/usr/share/doc/rsyslog/html/index.html` file

## 14.5. CONFIGURING TLS-ENCRYPTED REMOTE LOGGING

By default, Rsyslog sends remote-logging communication in the plain text format. If your scenario requires to secure this communication channel, you can encrypt it using TLS.

To use encrypted transport through TLS, configure both the server and the client. The server collects and analyzes the logs sent by one or more client systems.

You can use either the **ossli** network stream driver (OpenSSL) or the **gtls** stream driver (GnuTLS).



### NOTE

If you have a separate system with higher security, for example, a system that is not connected to any network or has stricter authorizations, use the separate system as the certifying authority (CA).

You can customize your connection settings with stream drivers on the server side on the **global**, **module**, and **input** levels, and on the client side on the **global** and **action** levels. The more specific configuration overrides the more general configuration. This means, for example, that you can use **ossli** in global settings for most connections and **gtls** on the input and action settings only for specific connections.

## Prerequisites

- You have **root** access to both the client and server systems.
- The following packages are installed on the server and the client systems:
  - The **rsyslog** package.

- For the **ossl** network stream driver, the **rsyslog-openssl** package.
- For the **gtls** network stream driver, the **rsyslog-gnutls** package.
- For generating certificates by using the **certtool** command, the **gnutls-utils** package.
- On your logging server, the following certificates are in the **/etc/pki/ca-trust/source/anchors/** directory and your system configuration is updated by using the **update-ca-trust** command:
  - **ca-cert.pem** - a CA certificate that can verify keys and certificates on logging servers and clients.
  - **server-cert.pem** - a public key of the logging server.
  - **server-key.pem** - a private key of the logging server.
- On your logging clients, the following certificates are in the **/etc/pki/ca-trust/source/anchors/** directory and your system configuration is updated by using **update-ca-trust**:
  - **ca-cert.pem** - a CA certificate that can verify keys and certificates on logging servers and clients.
  - **client-cert.pem** - a public key of a client.
  - **client-key.pem** - a private key of a client.
  - If the server runs RHEL 9.2 or later and FIPS mode is enabled, clients must either support the Extended Master Secret (EMS) extension or use TLS 1.3. TLS 1.2 connections without EMS fail. For more information, see the Red Hat Knowledgebase solution [TLS extension "Extended Master Secret" enforced](#).

## Procedure

1. Configure the server for receiving encrypted logs from your client systems:
  - a. Create a new file in the **/etc/rsyslog.d/** directory named, for example, **securelogser.conf**.
  - b. To encrypt the communication, the configuration file must contain paths to certificate files on your server, a selected authentication method, and a stream driver that supports TLS encryption. Add the following lines to the **/etc/rsyslog.d/securelogser.conf** file:

```
Set certificate files
global(
 DefaultNetstreamDriverCAFile="/etc/pki/ca-trust/source/anchors/ca-cert.pem"
 DefaultNetstreamDriverCertFile="/etc/pki/ca-trust/source/anchors/server-cert.pem"
 DefaultNetstreamDriverKeyFile="/etc/pki/ca-trust/source/anchors/server-key.pem"
)

TCP listener
module(
 load="imtcp"
 PermittedPeer=["client1.example.com", "client2.example.com"]
 StreamDriver.AuthMode="x509/name"
 StreamDriver.Mode="1"
 StreamDriver.Name="ossl"
)
```

```
Start up listener at port 514
input(
 type="imtcp"
 port="514"
)
```



## NOTE

If you prefer the GnuTLS driver, use the **StreamDriver.Name="gtls"** configuration option. See the documentation installed with the **rsyslog-doc** package for more information about less strict authentication modes than **x509/name**.

- c. Optional: From Rsyslog version 8.2310, which is provided in RHEL 9.4, you can customize the connection configuration. To do so, replace the **input** section with the following:

```
input(
 type="imtcp"
 Port="50515"
 StreamDriver.Name="<driver>"
 streamdriver.CAFile="/etc/rsyslog.d/<ca1>.pem"
 streamdriver.CertFile="/etc/rsyslog.d/<server1-cert>.pem"
 streamdriver.KeyFile="/etc/rsyslog.d/<server1-key>.pem"
)
```

- Replace **<driver>** with **ossl** or **gtls** depending on the driver you want to use.
  - Replace **<ca1>** with the CA certificate, **<server1-cert>** with the certificate, and **<server1-key>** with the key of the customized connection.
- d. Save the changes to the **/etc/rsyslog.d/securelogser.conf** file.
  - e. Verify the syntax of the **/etc/rsyslog.conf** file and any files in the **/etc/rsyslog.d/** directory:

```
rsyslogd -N 1
rsyslogd: version 8.1911.0-2.el8, config validation run (level 1)...
rsyslogd: End of config validation run. Bye.
```

- f. Make sure the **rsyslog** service is running and enabled on the logging server:

```
systemctl status rsyslog
```

- g. Restart the **rsyslog** service:

```
systemctl restart rsyslog
```

- h. Optional: If Rsyslog is not enabled, ensure the **rsyslog** service starts automatically after reboot:

```
systemctl enable rsyslog
```

2. Configure clients for sending encrypted logs to the server:

- a. On a client system, create a new file in the **/etc/rsyslog.d/** directory named, for example,

**securelogcli.conf.**

- b. Add the following lines to the **/etc/rsyslog.d/securelogcli.conf** file:

```
Set certificate files
global(
 DefaultNetstreamDriverCAFile="/etc/pki/ca-trust/source/anchors/ca-cert.pem"
 DefaultNetstreamDriverCertFile="/etc/pki/ca-trust/source/anchors/client-cert.pem"
 DefaultNetstreamDriverKeyFile="/etc/pki/ca-trust/source/anchors/client-key.pem"
)

Set up the action for all messages
*. * action(
 type="omfwd"
 StreamDriver="oss"
 StreamDriverMode="1"
 StreamDriverPermittedPeers="server.example.com"
 StreamDriverAuthMode="x509/name"
 target="server.example.com" port="514" protocol="tcp"
)
```

**NOTE**

If you prefer the GnuTLS driver, use the **StreamDriver.Name="gtls"** configuration option.

- c. Optional: From Rsyslog version 8.2310, which is provided in RHEL 9.4, you can customize the connection configuration. To do so, replace the **action** section with the following:

```
local1.* action(
 type="omfwd"
 StreamDriver="<driver>"
 StreamDriverMode="1"
 StreamDriverAuthMode="x509/certvalid"
 streamDriver.CAFile="/etc/rsyslog.d/<ca1>.pem"
 streamDriver.CertFile="/etc/rsyslog.d/<client1-cert>.pem"
 streamDriver.KeyFile="/etc/rsyslog.d/<client1-key>.pem"
 target="server.example.com" port="514" protocol="tcp"
)
```

- Replace **<driver>** with **oss** or **gtls** depending on the driver you want to use.
- Replace **<ca1>** with the CA certificate, **<client1-cert>** with the certificate, and **<client1-key>** with the key of the customized connection.

- d. Save the changes to the **/etc/rsyslog.d/securelogcli.conf** file.
- e. Verify the syntax of the **/etc/rsyslog.conf** file and other files in the **/etc/rsyslog.d/** directory:

```
rsyslogd -N 1
rsyslogd: version 8.1911.0-2.el8, config validation run (level 1)...
rsyslogd: End of config validation run. Bye.
```

- f. Make sure the **rsyslog** service is running and enabled on the logging server:

```
systemctl status rsyslog
```

- g. Restart the **rsyslog** service:

```
systemctl restart rsyslog
```

- h. Optional: If Rsyslog is not enabled, ensure the **rsyslog** service starts automatically after reboot:

```
systemctl enable rsyslog
```

## Verification

To verify that the client system sends messages to the server, follow these steps:

1. On the client system, send a test message:

```
logger test
```

2. On the server system, view the **/var/log/messages** log, for example:

```
cat /var/log/remote/msg/<hostname>/root.log
Feb 25 03:53:17 <hostname> root[6064]: test
```

Where **<hostname>** is the hostname of the client system. Note that the log contains the user name of the user that entered the logger command, in this case **root**.

## Additional resources

- **certtool(1)**, **openssl(1)**, **update-ca-trust(8)**, **rsyslogd(8)**, and **rsyslog.conf(5)** man pages on your system
- Documentation installed with the **rsyslog-doc** package at **/usr/share/doc/rsyslog/html/index.html**.
- [Using the logging system role with TLS](#) .

## 14.6. CONFIGURING A SERVER FOR RECEIVING REMOTE LOGGING INFORMATION OVER UDP

The **Rsyslog** application enables you to configure a system to receive logging information from remote systems. To use remote logging through UDP, configure both the server and the client. The receiving server collects and analyzes the logs sent by one or more client systems. By default, **rsyslog** uses UDP on port **514** to receive log information from remote systems.

Follow this procedure to configure a server for collecting and analyzing logs sent by one or more client systems over the UDP protocol.

### Prerequisites

- Rsyslog is installed on the server system.

- You are logged in as **root** on the server.
- The **policycoreutils-python-utils** package is installed for the optional step using the **semanage** command.
- The **firewalld** service is running.

## Procedure

1. Optional: To use a different port for **rsyslog** traffic than the default port **514**:
  - a. Add the **syslogd\_port\_t** SELinux type to the SELinux policy configuration, replacing **portno** with the port number you want **rsyslog** to use:

```
semanage port -a -t syslogd_port_t -p udp portno
```

- b. Configure **firewalld** to allow incoming **rsyslog** traffic, replacing **portno** with the port number and **zone** with the zone you want **rsyslog** to use:

```
firewall-cmd --zone=zone --permanent --add-port=portno/udp
success
firewall-cmd --reload
```

- c. Reload the firewall rules:

```
firewall-cmd --reload
```

2. Create a new **.conf** file in the **/etc/rsyslog.d/** directory, for example, **remotelogserv.conf**, and insert the following content:

```
Define templates before the rules that use them
Per-Host templates for remote systems
template(name="TmplAuthpriv" type="list") {
 constant(value="/var/log/remote/auth/")
 property(name="hostname")
 constant(value="/")
 property(name="programname" SecurePath="replace")
 constant(value=".log")
}

template(name="TmplMsg" type="list") {
 constant(value="/var/log/remote/msg/")
 property(name="hostname")
 constant(value="/")
 property(name="programname" SecurePath="replace")
 constant(value=".log")
}

Provides UDP syslog reception
module(load="imudp")

This ruleset processes remote messages
ruleset(name="remote1"){
 authpriv.* action(type="omfile" DynaFile="TmplAuthpriv")
 *.info;mail.none;authpriv.none;cron.none
```

```

 action(type="omfile" DynaFile="TplMsg")
 }

 input(type="imudp" port="514" ruleset="remote1")

```

Where **514** is the port number **rsyslog** uses by default. You can specify a different port instead.

3. Verify the syntax of the **/etc/rsyslog.conf** file and all **.conf** files in the **/etc/rsyslog.d/** directory:

```

rsyslogd -N 1
rsyslogd: version 8.1911.0-2.el8, config validation run...

```

4. Restart the **rsyslog** service.

```
systemctl restart rsyslog
```

5. Optional: If **rsyslog** is not enabled, ensure the **rsyslog** service starts automatically after reboot:

```
systemctl enable rsyslog
```

#### Additional resources

- **rsyslogd(8)**, **rsyslog.conf(5)**, **semanage(8)**, and **firewall-cmd(1)** man pages on your system
- Documentation installed with the **rsyslog-doc** package in the **/usr/share/doc/rsyslog/html/index.html** file

## 14.7. CONFIGURING REMOTE LOGGING TO A SERVER OVER UDP

You can configure a system for forwarding log messages to a server over the UDP protocol. The **omfwd** plug-in provides forwarding over UDP or TCP. The default protocol is UDP. Because the plug-in is built in, you do not have to load it.

#### Prerequisites

- The **rsyslog** package is installed on the client systems that should report to the server.
- You have configured the server for remote logging as described in [Configuring a server for receiving remote logging information over UDP](#).

#### Procedure

1. Create a new **.conf** file in the **/etc/rsyslog.d/** directory, for example, **10-remotelogcli.conf**, and insert the following content:

```

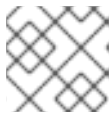
*. * action(type="omfwd"
 queue.type="linkedlist"
 queue.filename="example_fwd"
 action.resumeRetryCount="-1"
 queue.saveOnShutdown="on"
 target="example.com" port="portno" protocol="udp"
)

```



Where:

- The **queue.type="linkedList"** setting enables a LinkedList in-memory queue.
- The **queue.filename** setting defines a disk storage. The backup files are created with the **example\_fwd** prefix in the working directory specified by the preceding global **workDirectory** directive.
- The **action.resumeRetryCount -1** setting prevents **rsyslog** from dropping messages when retrying to connect if the server is not responding.
- The **enabled queue.saveOnShutdown="on"** setting saves in-memory data if **rsyslog** shuts down.
- The **portno** value is the port number you want **rsyslog** to use. The default value is **514**.
- The last line forwards all received messages to the logging server, port specification is optional.  
With this configuration, **rsyslog** sends messages to the server but keeps messages in memory if the remote server is not reachable. A file on disk is created only if **rsyslog** runs out of the configured memory queue space or needs to shut down, which benefits the system performance.



#### NOTE

Rsyslog processes configuration files **/etc/rsyslog.d/** in the lexical order.

2. Restart the **rsyslog** service.

```
systemctl restart rsyslog
```

3. Optional: If **rsyslog** is not enabled, ensure the **rsyslog** service starts automatically after reboot:

```
systemctl enable rsyslog
```

## Verification

To verify that the client system sends messages to the server, follow these steps:

1. On the client system, send a test message:

```
logger test
```

2. On the server system, view the **/var/log/remote/msg/hostname/root.log** log, for example:

```
cat /var/log/remote/msg/hostname/root.log
Feb 25 03:53:17 hostname root[6064]: test
```

Where **hostname** is the host name of the client system. Note that the log contains the user name of the user that entered the logger command, in this case **root**.

## Additional resources

- **rsyslogd(8)** and **rsyslog.conf(5)** man pages on your system

- Documentation installed with the **rsyslog-doc** package at `/usr/share/doc/rsyslog/html/index.html`

## 14.8. LOAD BALANCING HELPER IN RSYSLOG

When used in a cluster, you can improve Rsyslog load balancing by modifying the **RebindInterval** setting.

**RebindInterval** specifies an interval at which the current connection is broken and is re-established. This setting applies to TCP, UDP, and RELP traffic. The load balancers perceive it as a new connection and forward the messages to another physical target system.

**RebindInterval** is helpful in scenarios when a target system has changed its IP address. The Rsyslog application caches the IP address when the connection is established, therefore, the messages are sent to the same server. If the IP address changes, the UDP packets are lost until the Rsyslog service restarts. Re-establishing the connection ensures the IP is resolved by DNS again.

### Example usage of RebindInterval for TCP, UDP, and RELP traffic

```
action(type="omfwd" protocol="tcp" RebindInterval="250" target="example.com" port="514" ...)
action(type="omfwd" protocol="udp" RebindInterval="250" target="example.com" port="514" ...)
action(type="omrelp" RebindInterval="250" target="example.com" port="6514" ...)
```

## 14.9. CONFIGURING RELIABLE REMOTE LOGGING

With the Reliable Event Logging Protocol (RELP), you can send and receive **syslog** messages over TCP with a much reduced risk of message loss. RELP provides reliable delivery of event messages, which makes it useful in environments where message loss is not acceptable. To use RELP, configure the **imrelp** input module, which runs on the server and receives the logs, and the **omrelp** output module, which runs on the client and sends logs to the logging server.

### Prerequisites

- You have installed the **rsyslog**, **librelp**, and **rsyslog-relp** packages on the server and the client systems.
- The specified port is permitted in SELinux and open in the firewall.

### Procedure

1. Configure the client system for reliable remote logging:
  - a. On the client system, create a new **.conf** file in the `/etc/rsyslog.d/` directory named, for example, **relpclient.conf**, and insert the following content:

```
module(load="omrelp")
. action(type="omrelp" target="_target_IP_" port="_target_port_")
```

Where:

- **target\_IP** is the IP address of the logging server.

- **target\_port** is the port of the logging server.
- Save the changes to the **/etc/rsyslog.d/relpclient.conf** file.
  - Restart the **rsyslog** service.

```
systemctl restart rsyslog
```

- Optional: If **rsyslog** is not enabled, ensure the **rsyslog** service starts automatically after reboot:

```
systemctl enable rsyslog
```

## 2. Configure the server system for reliable remote logging:

- On the server system, create a new **.conf** file in the **/etc/rsyslog.d/** directory named, for example, **relpserv.conf**, and insert the following content:

```
ruleset(name="relp"){
 . action(type="omfile" file="_log_path_")
}

module(load="imrelp")
input(type="imrelp" port="_target_port_" ruleset="relp")
```

Where:

- **log\_path** specifies the path for storing messages.
  - **target\_port** is the port of the logging server. Use the same value as in the client configuration file.
- Save the changes to the **/etc/rsyslog.d/relpserv.conf** file.
  - Restart the **rsyslog** service.

```
systemctl restart rsyslog
```

- Optional: If **rsyslog** is not enabled, ensure the **rsyslog** service starts automatically after reboot:

```
systemctl enable rsyslog
```

## Verification

To verify that the client system sends messages to the server, follow these steps:

- On the client system, send a test message:

```
logger test
```

- On the server system, view the log at the specified **log\_path**, for example:

```
cat /var/log/remote/msg/hostname/root.log
Feb 25 03:53:17 hostname root[6064]: test
```

Where **hostname** is the host name of the client system. Note that the log contains the user name of the user that entered the logger command, in this case **root**.

#### Additional resources

- **rsyslogd(8)** and **rsyslog.conf(5)** man pages on your system
- Documentation installed with the **rsyslog-doc** package in the **/usr/share/doc/rsyslog/html/index.html** file

## 14.10. SUPPORTED RSYSLOG MODULES

To expand the functionality of the Rsyslog application, you can use specific modules. Modules provide additional inputs (Input Modules), outputs (Output Modules), and other functionalities. A module can also provide additional configuration directives that become available after you load the module.

You can list the input and output modules installed on your system by entering the following command:

```
ls /usr/lib64/rsyslog/{i,o}m*
```

You can view the list of all available **rsyslog** modules in the **/usr/share/doc/rsyslog/html/configuration/modules/idx\_output.html** file after you install the **rsyslog-doc** package.

## 14.11. CONFIGURING THE NETCONSOLE SERVICE TO LOG KERNEL MESSAGES TO A REMOTE HOST

When logging to disk or using a serial console is not possible, you can use the **netconsole** kernel module and the same-named service to log kernel messages over a network to a remote **rsyslog** service.

#### Prerequisites

- A system log service, such as **rsyslog** is installed on the remote host.
- The remote system log service is configured to receive incoming log entries from this host.

#### Procedure

1. Install the **netconsole-service** package:

```
dnf install netconsole-service
```

2. Edit the **/etc/sysconfig/netconsole** file and set the **SYSLOGADDR** parameter to the IP address of the remote host:

```
SYSLOGADDR=192.0.2.1
```

3. Enable and start the **netconsole** service:

```
systemctl enable --now netconsole
```

### Verification

- Display the **/var/log/messages** file on the remote system log server.

## 14.12. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES

- Documentation installed with the **rsyslog-doc** package in the **/usr/share/doc/rsyslog/html/index.html** file
- **rsyslog.conf(5)** and **rsyslogd(8)** man pages on your system
- [Configuring system logging without journald or with minimized journald usage](#) Knowledgebase article
- [Negative effects of the RHEL default logging setup on performance and their mitigations](#) Knowledgebase article
- The [Using the Logging system role](#) chapter

## CHAPTER 15. USING THE `logging` SYSTEM ROLE

As a system administrator, you can use the **logging** system role to configure a Red Hat Enterprise Linux host as a logging server to collect logs from many client systems.

### 15.1. FILTERING LOCAL LOG MESSAGES BY USING THE `logging` RHEL SYSTEM ROLE

You can use the property-based filter of the **logging** RHEL system role to filter your local log messages based on various conditions. As a result, you can achieve for example:

- **Log clarity:** In a high-traffic environment, logs can grow rapidly. The focus on specific messages, like errors, can help to identify problems faster.
- **Optimized system performance:** Excessive amount of logs is usually connected with system performance degradation. Selective logging for only the important events can prevent resource depletion, which enables your systems to run more efficiently.
- **Enhanced security:** Efficient filtering through security messages, like system errors and failed logins, helps to capture only the relevant logs. This is important for detecting breaches and meeting compliance standards.

#### Prerequisites

- [You have prepared the control node and the managed nodes](#)
- You are logged in to the control node as a user who can run playbooks on the managed nodes.
- The account you use to connect to the managed nodes has **sudo** permissions on them.

#### Procedure

1. Create a playbook file, for example `~/playbook.yml`, with the following content:

```

- name: Deploy the logging solution
 hosts: managed-node-01.example.com
 tasks:
 - name: Filter logs based on a specific value they contain
 ansible.builtin.include_role:
 name: redhat.rhel_system_roles.logging
 vars:
 logging_inputs:
 - name: files_input
 type: basics
 logging_outputs:
 - name: files_output0
 type: files
 property: msg
 property_op: contains
 property_value: error
 path: /var/log/errors.log
 - name: files_output1
 type: files
```

```

 property: msg
 property_op: "!contains"
 property_value: error
 path: /var/log/others.log
 logging_flows:
 - name: flow0
 inputs: [files_input]
 outputs: [files_output0, files_output1]

```

The settings specified in the example playbook include the following:

### logging\_inputs

Defines a list of logging input dictionaries. The **type: basics** option covers inputs from **systemd** journal or Unix socket.

### logging\_outputs

Defines a list of logging output dictionaries. The **type: files** option supports storing logs in the local files, usually in the **/var/log/** directory. The **property: msg; property: contains;** and **property\_value: error** options specify that all logs that contain the **error** string are stored in the **/var/log/errors.log** file. The **property: msg; property: !contains;** and **property\_value: error** options specify that all other logs are put in the **/var/log/others.log** file. You can replace the **error** value with the string by which you want to filter.

### logging\_flows

Defines a list of logging flow dictionaries to specify relationships between **logging\_inputs** and **logging\_outputs**. The **inputs: [files\_input]** option specifies a list of inputs, from which processing of logs starts. The **outputs: [files\_output0, files\_output1]** option specifies a list of outputs, to which the logs are sent.

For details about all variables used in the playbook, see the **/usr/share/ansible/roles/rhel-system-roles.logging/README.md** file on the control node.

2. Validate the playbook syntax:

```
$ ansible-playbook --syntax-check ~/playbook.yml
```

Note that this command only validates the syntax and does not protect against a wrong but valid configuration.

3. Run the playbook:

```
$ ansible-playbook ~/playbook.yml
```

## Verification

1. On the managed node, test the syntax of the **/etc/rsyslog.conf** file:

```

rsyslogd -N 1
rsyslogd: version 8.1911.0-6.el8, config validation run...
rsyslogd: End of config validation run. Bye.

```

2. On the managed node, verify that the system sends messages that contain the **error** string to the log:
  - a. Send a test message:

—

```
logger error
```

- b. View the `/var/log/errors.log` log, for example:

```
cat /var/log/errors.log
Aug 5 13:48:31 hostname root[6778]: error
```

Where **hostname** is the host name of the client system. Note that the log contains the user name of the user that entered the logger command, in this case **root**.

### Additional resources

- `/usr/share/ansible/roles/rhel-system-roles/logging/README.md` file
- `/usr/share/doc/rhel-system-roles/logging/` directory
- `rsyslog.conf(5)` and `syslog(3)` man pages on your system

## 15.2. APPLYING A REMOTE LOGGING SOLUTION BY USING THE LOGGING RHEL SYSTEM ROLE

You can use the **logging** RHEL system role to configure a remote logging solution, where one or more clients take logs from the **systemd-journal** service and forward them to a remote server. The server receives remote input from the **remote\_rsyslog** and **remote\_files** configurations, and outputs the logs to local files in directories named by remote host names.

As a result, you can cover use cases where you need for example:

- Centralized log management: Collecting, accessing, and managing log messages of multiple machines from a single storage point simplifies day-to-day monitoring and troubleshooting tasks. Also, this use case reduces the need to log into individual machines to check the log messages.
- Enhanced security: Storing log messages in one central place increases chances they are in a secure and tamper-proof environment. Such an environment makes it easier to detect and respond to security incidents more effectively and to meet audit requirements.
- Improved efficiency in log analysis: Correlating log messages from multiple systems is important for fast troubleshooting of complex problems that span multiple machines or services. That way you can quickly analyze and cross-reference events from different sources.

### Prerequisites

- [You have prepared the control node and the managed nodes](#)
- You are logged in to the control node as a user who can run playbooks on the managed nodes.
- The account you use to connect to the managed nodes has **sudo** permissions on them.
- Define the ports in the SELinux policy of the server or client system and open the firewall for those ports. The default SELinux policy includes ports 601, 514, 6514, 10514, and 20514. To use a different port, see [modify the SELinux policy on the client and server systems](#).

### Procedure



1. Create a playbook file, for example `~/playbook.yml`, with the following content:

```

- name: Deploy the logging solution
 hosts: managed-node-01.example.com
 tasks:
 - name: Configure the server to receive remote input
 ansible.builtin.include_role:
 name: redhat.rhel_system_roles.logging
 vars:
 logging_inputs:
 - name: remote_udp_input
 type: remote
 udp_ports: [601]
 - name: remote_tcp_input
 type: remote
 tcp_ports: [601]
 logging_outputs:
 - name: remote_files_output
 type: remote_files
 logging_flows:
 - name: flow_0
 inputs: [remote_udp_input, remote_tcp_input]
 outputs: [remote_files_output]

- name: Deploy the logging solution
 hosts: managed-node-02.example.com
 tasks:
 - name: Configure the server to output the logs to local files in directories named by
 remote host names
 ansible.builtin.include_role:
 name: redhat.rhel_system_roles.logging
 vars:
 logging_inputs:
 - name: basic_input
 type: basics
 logging_outputs:
 - name: forward_output0
 type: forwards
 severity: info
 target: <host1.example.com>
 udp_port: 601
 - name: forward_output1
 type: forwards
 facility: mail
 target: <host1.example.com>
 tcp_port: 601
 logging_flows:
 - name: flows0
 inputs: [basic_input]
 outputs: [forward_output0, forward_output1]
```

The settings specified in the first play of the example playbook include the following:

### logging\_inputs

Defines a list of logging input dictionaries. The **type: remote** option covers remote inputs

from the other logging system over the network. The **udp\_ports: [ 601 ]** option defines a list of UDP port numbers to monitor. The **tcp\_ports: [ 601 ]** option defines a list of TCP port numbers to monitor. If both **udp\_ports** and **tcp\_ports** is set, **udp\_ports** is used and **tcp\_ports** is dropped.

### logging\_outputs

Defines a list of logging output dictionaries. The **type: remote\_files** option makes output store logs to the local files per remote host and program name originated the logs.

### logging\_flows

Defines a list of logging flow dictionaries to specify relationships between **logging\_inputs** and **logging\_outputs**. The **inputs: [remote\_udp\_input, remote\_tcp\_input]** option specifies a list of inputs, from which processing of logs starts. The **outputs: [remote\_files\_output]** option specifies a list of outputs, to which the logs are sent.

The settings specified in the second play of the example playbook include the following:

### logging\_inputs

Defines a list of logging input dictionaries. The **type: basics** option covers inputs from **systemd** journal or Unix socket.

### logging\_outputs

Defines a list of logging output dictionaries. The **type: forwards** option supports sending logs to the remote logging server over the network. The **severity: info** option refers to log messages of the informative importance. The **facility: mail** option refers to the type of system program that is generating the log message. The **target: <host1.example.com>** option specifies the hostname of the remote logging server. The **udp\_port: 601/tcp\_port: 601** options define the UDP/TCP ports on which the remote logging server listens.

### logging\_flows

Defines a list of logging flow dictionaries to specify relationships between **logging\_inputs** and **logging\_outputs**. The **inputs: [basic\_input]** option specifies a list of inputs, from which processing of logs starts. The **outputs: [forward\_output0, forward\_output1]** option specifies a list of outputs, to which the logs are sent.

For details about all variables used in the playbook, see the **/usr/share/ansible/roles/rhel-system-roles.logging/README.md** file on the control node.

2. Validate the playbook syntax:

```
$ ansible-playbook --syntax-check ~/playbook.yml
```

Note that this command only validates the syntax and does not protect against a wrong but valid configuration.

3. Run the playbook:

```
$ ansible-playbook ~/playbook.yml
```

## Verification

1. On both the client and the server system, test the syntax of the **/etc/rsyslog.conf** file:

```
rsyslogd -N 1
rsyslogd: version 8.1911.0-6.el8, config validation run (level 1), master config
/etc/rsyslog.conf
```

```
rsyslogd: End of config validation run. Bye.
```

2. Verify that the client system sends messages to the server:
  - a. On the client system, send a test message:

```
logger test
```

- b. On the server system, view the `/var/log/<host2.example.com>/messages` log, for example:

```
cat /var/log/<host2.example.com>/messages
Aug 5 13:48:31 <host2.example.com> root[6778]: test
```

Where `<host2.example.com>` is the host name of the client system. Note that the log contains the user name of the user that entered the logger command, in this case **root**.

#### Additional resources

- `/usr/share/ansible/roles/rhel-system-roles/logging/README.md` file
- `/usr/share/doc/rhel-system-roles/logging/` directory
- `rsyslog.conf(5)` and `syslog(3)` manual pages

## 15.3. USING THE LOGGING RHEL SYSTEM ROLE WITH TLS

Transport Layer Security (TLS) is a cryptographic protocol designed to allow secure communication over the computer network.

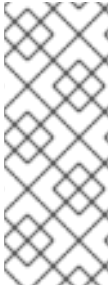
You can use the **logging** RHEL system role to configure a secure transfer of log messages, where one or more clients take logs from the **systemd-journal** service and transfer them to a remote server while using TLS.

Typically, TLS for transferring logs in a remote logging solution is used when sending sensitive data over less trusted or public networks, such as the Internet. Also, by using certificates in TLS you can ensure that the client is forwarding logs to the correct and trusted server. This prevents attacks like "man-in-the-middle".

### 15.3.1. Configuring client logging with TLS

You can use the **logging** RHEL system role to configure logging on RHEL clients and transfer logs to a remote logging system using TLS encryption.

This procedure creates a private key and a certificate. Next, it configures TLS on all hosts in the clients group in the Ansible inventory. The TLS protocol encrypts the message transmission for secure transfer of logs over the network.



## NOTE

You do not have to call the **certificate** RHEL system role in the playbook to create the certificate. The **logging** RHEL system role calls it automatically when the **logging\_certificates** variable is set.

In order for the CA to be able to sign the created certificate, the managed nodes must be enrolled in an IdM domain.

## Prerequisites

- [You have prepared the control node and the managed nodes](#)
- You are logged in to the control node as a user who can run playbooks on the managed nodes.
- The account you use to connect to the managed nodes has **sudo** permissions on them.
- The managed nodes are enrolled in an IdM domain.
- If the logging server you want to configure on the manage node runs RHEL 9.2 or later and the FIPS mode is enabled, clients must either support the Extended Master Secret (EMS) extension or use TLS 1.3. TLS 1.2 connections without EMS fail. For more information, see the Red Hat Knowledgebase solution [TLS extension "Extended Master Secret" enforced](#).

## Procedure

1. Create a playbook file, for example `~/playbook.yml`, with the following content:

```

- name: Configure remote logging solution using TLS for secure transfer of logs
 hosts: managed-node-01.example.com
 tasks:
 - name: Deploying files input and forwards output with certs
 ansible.builtin.include_role:
 name: redhat.rhel_system_roles.logging
 vars:
 logging_certificates:
 - name: logging_cert
 dns: ['www.example.com']
 ca: ipa
 principal: "logging/{{ inventory_hostname }}@IDM.EXAMPLE.COM"
 logging_pki_files:
 - ca_cert: /local/path/to/ca_cert.pem
 cert: /local/path/to/logging_cert.pem
 private_key: /local/path/to/logging_cert.pem
 logging_inputs:
 - name: input_name
 type: files
 input_log_path: /var/log/containers/*.log
 logging_outputs:
 - name: output_name
 type: forwards
 target: your_target_host
 tcp_port: 514
 tls: true
 pki_authmode: x509/name
```

```

 permitted_server: 'server.example.com'
 logging_flows:
 - name: flow_name
 inputs: [input_name]
 outputs: [output_name]

```

The settings specified in the example playbook include the following:

### logging\_certificates

The value of this parameter is passed on to **certificate\_requests** in the **certificate** RHEL system role and used to create a private key and certificate.

### logging\_pki\_files

Using this parameter, you can configure the paths and other settings that logging uses to find the CA, certificate, and key files used for TLS, specified with one or more of the following sub-parameters: **ca\_cert**, **ca\_cert\_src**, **cert**, **cert\_src**, **private\_key**, **private\_key\_src**, and **tls**.



#### NOTE

If you are using **logging\_certificates** to create the files on the managed node, do not use **ca\_cert\_src**, **cert\_src**, and **private\_key\_src**, which are used to copy files not created by **logging\_certificates**.

### ca\_cert

Represents the path to the CA certificate file on the managed node. Default path is **/etc/pki/tls/certs/ca.pem** and the file name is set by the user.

### cert

Represents the path to the certificate file on the managed node. Default path is **/etc/pki/tls/certs/server-cert.pem** and the file name is set by the user.

### private\_key

Represents the path to the private key file on the managed node. Default path is **/etc/pki/tls/private/server-key.pem** and the file name is set by the user.

### ca\_cert\_src

Represents the path to the CA certificate file on the control node which is copied to the target host to the location specified by **ca\_cert**. Do not use this if using **logging\_certificates**.

### cert\_src

Represents the path to a certificate file on the control node which is copied to the target host to the location specified by **cert**. Do not use this if using **logging\_certificates**.

### private\_key\_src

Represents the path to a private key file on the control node which is copied to the target host to the location specified by **private\_key**. Do not use this if using **logging\_certificates**.

### tls

Setting this parameter to **true** ensures secure transfer of logs over the network. If you do not want a secure wrapper, you can set **tls: false**.

For details about all variables used in the playbook, see the **/usr/share/ansible/roles/rhel-system-roles.logging/README.md** file on the control node.

2. Validate the playbook syntax:

```
$ ansible-playbook --syntax-check ~/playbook.yml
```

Note that this command only validates the syntax and does not protect against a wrong but valid configuration.

3. Run the playbook:

```
$ ansible-playbook ~/playbook.yml
```

### Additional resources

- [/usr/share/ansible/roles/rhel-system-roles/logging/README.md](#) file
- [/usr/share/doc/rhel-system-roles/logging/](#) directory
- [/usr/share/ansible/roles/rhel-system-roles/certificate/README.md](#) file
- [/usr/share/doc/rhel-system-roles/certificate/](#) directory
- [Requesting certificates using RHEL system roles](#) .
- [rsyslog.conf\(5\)](#) and [syslog\(3\)](#) manual pages

### 15.3.2. Configuring server logging with TLS

You can use the **logging** RHEL system role to configure logging on RHEL servers and set them to receive logs from a remote logging system using TLS encryption.

This procedure creates a private key and a certificate. Next, it configures TLS on all hosts in the server group in the Ansible inventory.



#### NOTE

You do not have to call the **certificate** RHEL system role in the playbook to create the certificate. The **logging** RHEL system role calls it automatically.

In order for the CA to be able to sign the created certificate, the managed nodes must be enrolled in an IdM domain.

### Prerequisites

- [You have prepared the control node and the managed nodes](#)
- You are logged in to the control node as a user who can run playbooks on the managed nodes.
- The account you use to connect to the managed nodes has **sudo** permissions on them.
- The managed nodes are enrolled in an IdM domain.
- If the logging server you want to configure on the manage node runs RHEL 9.2 or later and the FIPS mode is enabled, clients must either support the Extended Master Secret (EMS) extension or use TLS 1.3. TLS 1.2 connections without EMS fail. For more information, see the Red Hat Knowledgebase solution [TLS extension "Extended Master Secret" enforced](#) .

## Procedure

1. Create a playbook file, for example `~/playbook.yml`, with the following content:

```

- name: Configure remote logging solution using TLS for secure transfer of logs
 hosts: managed-node-01.example.com
 tasks:
 - name: Deploying remote input and remote_files output with certs
 ansible.builtin.include_role:
 name: redhat.rhel_system_roles.logging
 vars:
 logging_certificates:
 - name: logging_cert
 dns: ['www.example.com']
 ca: ipa
 principal: "logging/{{ inventory_hostname }}@IDM.EXAMPLE.COM"
 logging_pki_files:
 - ca_cert: /local/path/to/ca_cert.pem
 cert: /local/path/to/logging_cert.pem
 private_key: /local/path/to/logging_cert.pem
 logging_inputs:
 - name: input_name
 type: remote
 tcp_ports: [514]
 tls: true
 permitted_clients: ['clients.example.com']
 logging_outputs:
 - name: output_name
 type: remote_files
 remote_log_path: /var/log/remote/%FROMHOST%/PROGRAMNAME:::secpath-
replace%.log
 async_writing: true
 client_count: 20
 io_buffer_size: 8192
 logging_flows:
 - name: flow_name
 inputs: [input_name]
 outputs: [output_name]
```

The settings specified in the example playbook include the following:

### logging\_certificates

The value of this parameter is passed on to **certificate\_requests** in the **certificate** RHEL system role and used to create a private key and certificate.

### logging\_pki\_files

Using this parameter, you can configure the paths and other settings that logging uses to find the CA, certificate, and key files used for TLS, specified with one or more of the following sub-parameters: **ca\_cert**, **ca\_cert\_src**, **cert**, **cert\_src**, **private\_key**, **private\_key\_src**, and **tls**.

**NOTE**

If you are using **logging\_certificates** to create the files on the managed node, do not use **ca\_cert\_src**, **cert\_src**, and **private\_key\_src**, which are used to copy files not created by **logging\_certificates**.

**ca\_cert**

Represents the path to the CA certificate file on the managed node. Default path is **/etc/pki/tls/certs/ca.pem** and the file name is set by the user.

**cert**

Represents the path to the certificate file on the managed node. Default path is **/etc/pki/tls/certs/server-cert.pem** and the file name is set by the user.

**private\_key**

Represents the path to the private key file on the managed node. Default path is **/etc/pki/tls/private/server-key.pem** and the file name is set by the user.

**ca\_cert\_src**

Represents the path to the CA certificate file on the control node which is copied to the target host to the location specified by **ca\_cert**. Do not use this if using **logging\_certificates**.

**cert\_src**

Represents the path to a certificate file on the control node which is copied to the target host to the location specified by **cert**. Do not use this if using **logging\_certificates**.

**private\_key\_src**

Represents the path to a private key file on the control node which is copied to the target host to the location specified by **private\_key**. Do not use this if using **logging\_certificates**.

**tls**

Setting this parameter to **true** ensures secure transfer of logs over the network. If you do not want a secure wrapper, you can set **tls: false**.

For details about all variables used in the playbook, see the **/usr/share/ansible/roles/rhel-system-roles.logging/README.md** file on the control node.

2. Validate the playbook syntax:

```
$ ansible-playbook --syntax-check ~/playbook.yml
```

Note that this command only validates the syntax and does not protect against a wrong but valid configuration.

3. Run the playbook:

```
$ ansible-playbook ~/playbook.yml
```

**Additional resources**

- **/usr/share/ansible/roles/rhel-system-roles.logging/README.md** file
- **/usr/share/doc/rhel-system-roles/logging/** directory
- [Requesting certificates using RHEL system roles](#) .



- **rsyslog.conf(5)** and **syslog(3)** manual pages

## 15.4. USING THE LOGGING RHEL SYSTEM ROLES WITH RELP

Reliable Event Logging Protocol (RELP) is a networking protocol for data and message logging over the TCP network. It ensures reliable delivery of event messages and you can use it in environments that do not tolerate any message loss.

The RELP sender transfers log entries in the form of commands and the receiver acknowledges them once they are processed. To ensure consistency, RELP stores the transaction number to each transferred command for any kind of message recovery.

You can consider a remote logging system in between the RELP Client and RELP Server. The RELP Client transfers the logs to the remote logging system and the RELP Server receives all the logs sent by the remote logging system. To achieve that use case, you can use the **logging** RHEL system role to configure the logging system to reliably send and receive log entries.

### 15.4.1. Configuring client logging with RELP

You can use the **logging** RHEL system role to configure a transfer of log messages stored locally to the remote logging system with RELP.

This procedure configures RELP on all hosts in the **clients** group in the Ansible inventory. The RELP configuration uses Transport Layer Security (TLS) to encrypt the message transmission for secure transfer of logs over the network.

#### Prerequisites

- [You have prepared the control node and the managed nodes](#)
- You are logged in to the control node as a user who can run playbooks on the managed nodes.
- The account you use to connect to the managed nodes has **sudo** permissions on them.

#### Procedure

1. Create a playbook file, for example **~/playbook.yml**, with the following content:

```

- name: Configure client-side of the remote logging solution using RELP
 hosts: managed-node-01.example.com
 tasks:
 - name: Deploy basic input and RELP output
 ansible.builtin.include_role:
 name: redhat.rhel_system_roles.logging
 vars:
 logging_inputs:
 - name: basic_input
 type: basics
 logging_outputs:
 - name: relp_client
 type: relp
 target: logging.server.com
 port: 20514
 tls: true
```

```

ca_cert: /etc/pki/tls/certs/ca.pem
cert: /etc/pki/tls/certs/client-cert.pem
private_key: /etc/pki/tls/private/client-key.pem
pki_authmode: name
permitted_servers:
 - '*.server.example.com'
logging_flows:
 - name: example_flow
 inputs: [basic_input]
 outputs: [relp_client]

```

The settings specified in the example playbook include the following:

### target

This is a required parameter that specifies the host name where the remote logging system is running.

### port

Port number the remote logging system is listening.

### tls

Ensures secure transfer of logs over the network. If you do not want a secure wrapper you can set the **tls** variable to **false**. By default **tls** parameter is set to true while working with RELP and requires key/certificates and triplets **{ca\_cert, cert, private\_key}** and/or **{ca\_cert\_src, cert\_src, private\_key\_src}**.

- If the **{ca\_cert\_src, cert\_src, private\_key\_src}** triplet is set, the default locations **/etc/pki/tls/certs** and **/etc/pki/tls/private** are used as the destination on the managed node to transfer files from control node. In this case, the file names are identical to the original ones in the triplet
- If the **{ca\_cert, cert, private\_key}** triplet is set, files are expected to be on the default path before the logging configuration.
- If both triplets are set, files are transferred from local path from control node to specific path of the managed node.

### ca\_cert

Represents the path to CA certificate. Default path is **/etc/pki/tls/certs/ca.pem** and the file name is set by the user.

### cert

Represents the path to certificate. Default path is **/etc/pki/tls/certs/server-cert.pem** and the file name is set by the user.

### private\_key

Represents the path to private key. Default path is **/etc/pki/tls/private/server-key.pem** and the file name is set by the user.

### ca\_cert\_src

Represents local CA certificate file path which is copied to the managed node. If **ca\_cert** is specified, it is copied to the location.

### cert\_src

Represents the local certificate file path which is copied to the managed node. If **cert** is specified, it is copied to the location.

### private\_key\_src

Represents the local key file path which is copied to the managed node. If **private\_key** is specified, it is copied to the location.

#### **pki\_authmode**

Accepts the authentication mode as **name** or **fingerprint**.

#### **permitted\_servers**

List of servers that will be allowed by the logging client to connect and send logs over TLS.

#### **inputs**

List of logging input dictionary.

#### **outputs**

List of logging output dictionary.

For details about all variables used in the playbook, see the **/usr/share/ansible/roles/rhel-system-roles.logging/README.md** file on the control node.

2. Validate the playbook syntax:

```
$ ansible-playbook --syntax-check ~/playbook.yml
```

Note that this command only validates the syntax and does not protect against a wrong but valid configuration.

3. Run the playbook:

```
$ ansible-playbook ~/playbook.yml
```

#### Additional resources

- **/usr/share/ansible/roles/rhel-system-roles.logging/README.md** file
- **/usr/share/doc/rhel-system-roles/logging/** directory
- **rsyslog.conf(5)** and **syslog(3)** manual pages

### 15.4.2. Configuring server logging with RELP

You can use the **logging** RHEL system role to configure a server for receiving log messages from the remote logging system with RELP.

This procedure configures RELP on all hosts in the **server** group in the Ansible inventory. The RELP configuration uses TLS to encrypt the message transmission for secure transfer of logs over the network.

#### Prerequisites

- [You have prepared the control node and the managed nodes](#)
- You are logged in to the control node as a user who can run playbooks on the managed nodes.
- The account you use to connect to the managed nodes has **sudo** permissions on them.

#### Procedure

1. Create a playbook file, for example `~/playbook.yml`, with the following content:

```

- name: Configure server-side of the remote logging solution using RELP
 hosts: managed-node-01.example.com
 tasks:
 - name: Deploying remote input and remote_files output
 ansible.builtin.include_role:
 name: redhat.rhel_system_roles.logging
 vars:
 logging_inputs:
 - name: relp_server
 type: relp
 port: 20514
 tls: true
 ca_cert: /etc/pki/tls/certs/ca.pem
 cert: /etc/pki/tls/certs/server-cert.pem
 private_key: /etc/pki/tls/private/server-key.pem
 pki_authmode: name
 permitted_clients:
 - '*client.example.com'
 logging_outputs:
 - name: remote_files_output
 type: remote_files
 logging_flows:
 - name: example_flow
 inputs: [relp_server]
 outputs: [remote_files_output]
```

The settings specified in the example playbook include the following:

### port

Port number the remote logging system is listening.

### tls

Ensures secure transfer of logs over the network. If you do not want a secure wrapper you can set the **tls** variable to **false**. By default **tls** parameter is set to true while working with RELP and requires key/certificates and triplets **{ca\_cert, cert, private\_key}** and/or **{ca\_cert\_src, cert\_src, private\_key\_src}**.

- If the **{ca\_cert\_src, cert\_src, private\_key\_src}** triplet is set, the default locations **/etc/pki/tls/certs** and **/etc/pki/tls/private** are used as the destination on the managed node to transfer files from control node. In this case, the file names are identical to the original ones in the triplet
- If the **{ca\_cert, cert, private\_key}** triplet is set, files are expected to be on the default path before the logging configuration.
- If both triplets are set, files are transferred from local path from control node to specific path of the managed node.

### ca\_cert

Represents the path to CA certificate. Default path is **/etc/pki/tls/certs/ca.pem** and the file name is set by the user.

### cert

Represents the path to the certificate. Default path is **/etc/pki/tls/certs/server-cert.pem** and the file name is set by the user.

#### **private\_key**

Represents the path to private key. Default path is **/etc/pki/tls/private/server-key.pem** and the file name is set by the user.

#### **ca\_cert\_src**

Represents local CA certificate file path which is copied to the managed node. If **ca\_cert** is specified, it is copied to the location.

#### **cert\_src**

Represents the local certificate file path which is copied to the managed node. If **cert** is specified, it is copied to the location.

#### **private\_key\_src**

Represents the local key file path which is copied to the managed node. If **private\_key** is specified, it is copied to the location.

#### **pki\_authmode**

Accepts the authentication mode as **name** or **fingerprint**.

#### **permitted\_clients**

List of clients that will be allowed by the logging server to connect and send logs over TLS.

#### **inputs**

List of logging input dictionary.

#### **outputs**

List of logging output dictionary.

For details about all variables used in the playbook, see the **/usr/share/ansible/roles/rhel-system-roles.logging/README.md** file on the control node.

2. Validate the playbook syntax:

```
$ ansible-playbook --syntax-check ~/playbook.yml
```

Note that this command only validates the syntax and does not protect against a wrong but valid configuration.

3. Run the playbook:

```
$ ansible-playbook ~/playbook.yml
```

#### Additional resources

- **/usr/share/ansible/roles/rhel-system-roles.logging/README.md** file
- **/usr/share/doc/rhel-system-roles/logging/** directory
- **rsyslog.conf(5)** and **syslog(3)** manual pages

## 15.5. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES

- [Preparing a control node and managed nodes to use RHEL system roles](#)

- Documentation installed with the **rhel-system-roles** package in **/usr/share/ansible/roles/rhel-system-roles.logging/README.html**.
- [RHEL system roles](#)
- **ansible-playbook(1)** man page on your system